| Prerequisites for the EEM Python Module          | 77 |
| Information About EEM Python Module            | 77 |
| Python Scripting in EEM                       | 77 |
| EEM Python Package                            | 77 |
| Python-Supported EEM Actions                   | 78 |
| EEM Variables                                  | 79 |
| EEM CLI Library Command Extensions             | 79 |
| How to Configure the EEM Python Policy         | 80 |
| Registering a Python Policy                    | 80 |
| Running Python Scripts as Part of EEM Applet Actions | 81 |
| Adding a Python Script in an EEM Applet        | 83 |
| Additional References EEM Python Module        | 85 |
| Feature Information for EEM Python Module      | 86 |

---

**PART III**

Model-Driven Programmability 89

**CHAPTER 8**

NETCONF Protocol 91

Restrictions for the NETCONF Protocol 91

Information About the NETCONF Protocol 91

Introduction to Data Models - Programmatic and Standards-Based Configuration 91

NETCONF 92

NETCONF RESTCONF IPv6 Support 92

NETCONF Global Session Lock 92

NETCONF Kill Session 93

Candidate Config Support 93

NETCONF Operations on Candidate 94

Candidate Support Configuration 95

How to Configure the NETCONF Protocol 96

Providing Privilege Access to Use NETCONF 96

Configuring NETCONF-YANG 97

Configuring NETCONF Options 98

Configuring SNMP 98

Verifying the NETCONF Protocol Configuration 100

Additional References for NETCONF Protocol 102
Contents

Connecting the gNMI Client 132
Configuration Examples for Enabling the gNMI Protocol 133
   Example: Enabling the gNMI Protocol 133
Additional References for the gNMI Protocol 133
Feature Information for the gNMI Protocol 134

CHAPTER 11  Model Based AAA 137
   Model Based AAA 137
   Prerequisites for Model Based AAA 137
   Initial Operation 137
   Group Membership 138
   NACM Privilege Level Dependencies 139
   NACM Configuration Management and Persistance 139
   Resetting the NACM Configuration 139
   Sample NACM Configuration 139
Additional References for Model Based AAA 143
Feature Information for Model-Based AAA 143

CHAPTER 12  Model-Driven Telemetry 145
   Model-Driven Telemetry 145
   Prerequisites for Model-Driven Telemetry 145
   Information About Model-Driven Telemetry 146
      Model-Driven Telemetry Overview 146
      Subscription Overview 146
      Sample <establish-subscription> RPC 147
      RPC Support in Telemetry 148
      NETCONF Sessions in Telemetry 148
      High Availability in Telemetry 149
   Sample Model-Driven Telemetry RPCs 149
      Creating a Subscription 149
      Receiving a Response Code 149
      Receiving Subscription Push-Updates 149
      Retrieving Subscription Details 150
      Deleting a Subscription 151
Contents

Verifying OpenFlow  199
Additional References for OpenFlow  201
Feature Information for OpenFlow  202
CHAPTER 1

New and Changed Information

This chapter provides release-specific information about all features.

- New and Changed Feature Information, on page 1

New and Changed Feature Information

This table summarizes the new and changed features, the supported platforms, and links to features.

Table 1: New and Changed Feature Information

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Release &amp; Platform</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Provisioning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature</td>
<td>Release &amp; Platform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zero-Touch Provisioning</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 3650 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 3850 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.6.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco ASR 1000 Aggregation Services Routers (ASR1001-X, ASR1001-HX, ASR1002-X, ASR1002-HX)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9500-High Performance Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco ASR 1000 Aggregation Services Routers (ASR1004, ASR1006, ASR1006-X, ASR1009-X, ASR1013)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zero Touch Provisioning: HTTP Copy</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.6.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 3650 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 3850 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.6.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco ASR 1000 Aggregation Services Routers (ASR1004, ASR1006, ASR1006-X, ASR1009-X, ASR1013)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9500-High Performance Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature</td>
<td>Release &amp; Platform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| iPXE                  | Cisco IOS XE Denali 16.3.2 and Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a  
|                       | • Cisco Catalyst 3650 Series Switches  
|                       | • Cisco Catalyst 3650 Series Switches  
|                       | Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.6.1  
|                       | • Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches  
|                       | • Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches  
|                       | Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.6.2  
|                       | • Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switches  
|                       | Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a  
|                       | • Cisco Catalyst 9500-High Performance Series Switches  
|                       | Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.2  
|                       | • Cisco Catalyst 9200 Series Switches  
| Shells and Scripting  |                                                                                                                                                     |
| Guest Shell           | Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a  
|                       | • Cisco Catalyst 3650 Series Switches  
|                       | • Cisco Catalyst 3850 Series Switches  
|                       | • Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches  
|                       | • Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches  
|                       | Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1b  
|                       | • Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers  
|                       | Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.6.2  
|                       | • Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switches  
|                       | Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.7.1  
|                       | • Cisco ASR 1000 Aggregation Services Routers (ASR1001-X, ASR1001-HX, ASR1002-X, ASR1002-HX)  
|                       | • Cisco Cloud Services Router 1000V Series  
|                       | Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a  
|                       | • Cisco Catalyst 9500-High Performance Series Switches  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Release &amp; Platform</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Python APIs</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 3650 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 3850 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.6.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco ASR 1000 Aggregation Services Routers (ASR1001-X, ASR1001-HX, ASR1002-X, ASR1002-HX)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Cloud Services Router 1000V Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a, this feature was implemented on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9500-High Performance Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature</td>
<td>Release &amp; Platform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Python CLI Module</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 3650 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 3850 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.6.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco ASR 1000 Aggregation Services Routers (ASR1001-X, ASR1001-HX, ASR1002-X, ASR1002-HX)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Cloud Services Router 1000V Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Router models with a minimum of 4 GB RAM.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco ASR 1000 Aggregation Services Routers (ASR1004, ASR1006, ASR1006-X, ASR1009-X, ASR1013)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9500-High Performance Series Switches</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## New and Changed Feature Information

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Release &amp; Platform</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| EEM Python Module             | Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a  
|                               | • Cisco Catalyst 3650 Series Switches  
|                               | • Cisco Catalyst 3850 Series Switches  
|                               | • Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches  
|                               | • Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches  
|                               | Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1b  
|                               | • Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers  
|                               | Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.6.2.  
|                               | • Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switches  
|                               | Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.7.1  
|                               | • Cisco ASR 1000 Aggregation Services Routers (ASR1001-X, ASR1001-HX, ASR1002-X, ASR1002-HX)  
|                               | • Cisco Cloud Services Router 1000V Series  
|                               | Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a  
|                               | • Cisco Catalyst 9500-High Performance Series Switches  

Model-Driven Programmability
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Release &amp; Platform</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NETCONF Network Management</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Denali 16.3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface</td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 3650 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 3850 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.6.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco ASR 900 Series Aggregation Services Routers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Network Convergence System 4200 Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9200 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.10.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controllers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Network Convergence System 520 Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco IR1101 Integrated Services Router Rugged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature</td>
<td>Release &amp; Platform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NETCONF and RESTCONF IPv6 Support</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco 1000 Series Integrated Services Routers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco ASR 1000 Series Aggregated Services Routers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco ASR 900 Series Aggregated Services Routers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 3650 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 3850 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco eBR-8 Converged Broadband Router</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Cloud Services Router 1000V Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco ISR 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gNMI Protocol</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Model-Based AAA</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco 1000 Series Integrated Services Routers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco ASR 1000 Series Aggregation Services Routers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco ASR 900 Series Aggregation Services Routers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco ASR 920 Series Aggregation Services Routers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Cloud Services Router 1000v Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Network Convergence System 4200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 3650 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 3850 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature</td>
<td>Release &amp; Platform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Model-Driven Telemetry NETCONF Dial-In</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.6.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 3650 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 3850 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.6.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco ASR 1000 Aggregation Services Routers (ASR1001-HX, ASR1001-X, ASR1002-HX, ASR1002-X)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco ASR 1000 RP2 and RP3 Series Aggregation Services Routers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco 9500-High Performance Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco ASR 900 Series Aggregation Services Routers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco ASR 920 Series Aggregation Services Routers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco cBR-8 Converged Broadband Router</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Network Convergence System 4200 Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9200 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature</td>
<td>Release &amp; Platform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In-Service Model Updates</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.6.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 3650 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 3850 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.6.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco ASR 1000 Aggregation Services Routers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9500-High Performance Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature</td>
<td>Release &amp; Platform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RESTCONF Network Management Interface</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.6.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco ASR 1000 Aggregation Services Routers (ASR1001-HX and ASR1002-HX)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Cloud Services Router 1000V Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco ASR 9xx Series Aggregation Services Routers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Network Convergence System 4200 Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 3650 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 3850 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9200 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PART I

Provisioning

- Zero-Touch Provisioning, on page 15
- iPXE, on page 25
Zero-Touch Provisioning

To address network provisioning challenges, Cisco introduces a zero-touch provisioning model. This module describes the Zero-Touch Provisioning feature.

The Zero-Touch Provisioning feature is enabled automatically; no configuration is required.

---

**Note**

- Information About Zero-Touch Provisioning, on page 15
- Sample Zero-Touch Provisioning Configurations, on page 17
- Feature Information for Zero-Touch Provisioning, on page 21

---

### Information About Zero-Touch Provisioning

#### Zero-Touch Provisioning Overview

Zero-Touch Provisioning provides open bootstrap interfaces to automate network device provisioning in heterogeneous network environments.

When a device that supports Zero-Touch Provisioning boots up, and does not find the startup configuration (during initial installation), the device enters the Zero-Touch Provisioning mode. The device searches for a Dynamic Host Control Protocol (DHCP) server, bootstraps itself with its interface IP address, gateway, and Domain Name System (DNS) server IP address, and enables Guest Shell. The device then obtains the IP address or URL of an HTTP/TFTP server, and downloads the Python script from an HTTP/TFTP server to configure the device.

Guest Shell provides the environment for the Python script to run. Guest Shell executes the downloaded Python script and applies an initial configuration to the device.

After initial provisioning is complete, Guest Shell remains enabled. For more information, see the Guest Shell chapter.

---

**Note**

In case Zero-Touch Provisioning fails, the device falls back to AutoInstall to load configuration files. For more information, see Using AutoInstall and Setup.
DHCP Server Configuration for Zero-Touch Provisioning

In Zero-Touch Provisioning, a DHCP server must be running on the same network as the new device that is being provisioned. Zero-Touch Provisioning is supported on both management ports and in-band ports.

When the new device is switched on, it retrieves the IP address information of the HTTP/TFTP server where the Python script resides, and the folder path of the Python script from the DHCP server. For more information on Python Scripts, see the Python API and Python CLI Module chapters.

The DHCP server responds to DHCP discovery events with the following options:

- Option 150—(Optional) Contains a list of IP addresses that points to the HTTP/TFTP server on the management network that hosts the Python scripts to be run.
- Option 67—Contains the Python script file path on the HTTP/TFTP server.

After receiving these DHCP options, the device connects to the HTTP/TFTP server, and downloads the Python script. The device, at this point does not have any route to reach the HTTP/TFTP server, so it uses the default route provided by the DHCP server.

DHCPv6 Support

In Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.1, Dynamic Host Control Protocol Version 6 (DHCPv6) support is added to the Zero-touch provisioning feature. DHCPv6 is enabled by default, and will work on any device that boots without a startup configuration.

DHCPv6 is only supported on Catalyst 9300 and 9500 Series Switches.

DHCPv6 is supported by both TFTP and HTTP download of Python scripts. If the HTTP or TFTP download of Python scripts fail, the device will revert to the start (without any configuration). For both DHCPv4, and DHCPv6 to work, the correct HTTP file path must be available in the DHCP configuration.

There can be scenarios where the same interface can have both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses, or two different interfaces in the network - one can receive IPv4 traffic and the other IPv6 traffic. We recommend that you use either the DHCPv4 or DHCPv6 option in your deployment.

The following is a sample DHCPv4: /etc/dhcp/dhcpd.conf:

```conf
host <hostname> {  
  option dhcp-client-identifier "xxxxxxxxxxxxxxx";  
  option host-name "<hostname>";  
  option log-servers x.x.x.x;  
  fixed-address x.x.x.x;  
  if option vendor-class-identifier = "..." {  
    option vendor-class-identifier "...";  
    if exists user-class and option user-class = "iPXE" {  
      filename "http://x.x.x.x/…/<image>";  
    } else {  
      filename "http://x.x.x.x/…/<script-name>";  
    }  
  }  
}
```

The following is a sample ISC DHCPv6 server configuration:
Sample Zero-Touch Provisioning Configurations

Sample DHCP Server Configuration on a Management Port Using TFTP Copy

The following is a sample DHCP server configuration using TFTP copy, when connected via the management port on a device:

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ip dhcp excluded-address 10.1.1.1
Device(config)# ip dhcp excluded-address vrf Mgmt-vrf 10.1.1.1 10.1.1.10
Device(config)# ip dhcp pool pnp_device_pool
Device(config-dhcp)# vrf Mgmt-vrf
Device(config-dhcp)# network 10.1.1.0 255.255.255.0
Device(config-dhcp)# default-router 10.1.1.1
Device(config-dhcp)# option 150 ip 203.0.113.254
Device(config-dhcp)# exit
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/2
Device(config-if)# no ip dhcp client request tftp-server-address
Device(config-if)# end

Sample DHCP Server Configuration on a Management Port Using HTTP Copy

The following is a sample DHCP server configuration using HTTP copy, when connected via the management port on a device:

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ip dhcp pool pnp_device_pool
Device(config-dhcp)# vrf Mgmt-vrf
Device(config-dhcp)# network 10.1.1.0 255.255.255.0
Device(config-dhcp)# default-router 10.1.1.1
Device(config-dhcp)# option 67 ascii http://198.51.100.1:8000/sample_python_2.py
Device(config-dhcp)# end

Sample DHCP Server Configuration on an In-Band Port Using TFTP Copy

The following is a sample DHCP server configuration using TFTP copy, when connected via the in-band port on a device:

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ip dhcp excluded-address 10.1.1.1
Device(config)# ip dhcp pool pnp_device_pool
Device(config-dhcp)# network 10.1.1.0 255.255.255.0

Sample DHCP Server Configuration on an In-Band Port Using HTTP Copy

The following is a sample DHCP server configuration using HTTP copy, when connected via the in-band port on a device:

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ip dhcp excluded-address 10.1.1.1
Device(config)# ip dhcp pool pnp_device_pool
Device(config-dhcp)# network 10.1.1.0 255.255.255.0
Device(config-dhcp)# default-router 10.1.1.1
Device(config-dhcp)# option 67 ascii http://192.0.2.1:8000/sample_python_2.py
Device(config-dhcp)# end

Sample DHCP Server Configuration on a Linux Ubuntu Device

The following sample DHCP server configuration displays that the server is either connected to the management port or in-band port on a device, and a Python script is copied from a TFTP server.

root@ubuntu-server:/etc/dhcp# more dhcpd.conf
subnet 10.1.1.0 netmask 255.255.255.0 {
  range 10.1.1.2 10.1.1.255;
  host 3850 {
    fixed-address 10.1.1.246 ;
    hardware ethernet CC:D8:C1:85:6F:00;
    option bootfile-name !<opt 67> " /python_dir/python_script.py";
    option tftp-server-name !<opt 150> "203.0.113.254";
  }
}

The following sample DHCP configuration shows that a Python script is copied from an HTTP server to the device:

Day0_with_mgmt_port_http
------------------------
subnet 192.168.1.0 netmask 255.255.255.0 {
  range 192.168.1.2 192.168.1.255;
  host C2-3850 {
    fixed-address 192.168.1.246 ;
    hardware ethernet CC:D8:C1:85:6F:00;
    option bootfile-name "http://192.168.1.46/sample_python_2.py";
  }
}
Once the DHCP server is running, boot a management-network connected device, and the rest of the configuration is automatic.

Sample DHCPv6 Server Configuration on a Management Port Using TFTP Copy

The following is a sample DHCPv6 server configuration using TFTP copy, when connected via the management port on a device:

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ipv6 dhcp pool ztp
Device(config-dhcpv6)# address prefix 2001:DB8::1/64
Device(config-dhcpv6)# domain-name cisco.com
Device(config-dhcpv6)# bootfile-url tftp://[2001:db8::46]/sample_day0_script.py
Device(config-dhcpv6)# exit
Device(config)# interface vlan 20
Device(config-if)# ipv6 dhcp server ztp
Device(config-if)# end

Sample Python Provisioning Script

The following is a sample Python script can be used from either an HTTP or a TFTP server:

```python
print("\n\n *** Sample ZTP Day0 Python Script *** \n\n"
# Importing cli module
import cli

print("\n\n *** Executing show platform *** \n\n")
cli_command = "show platform"
cli.executep(cli_command)

print("\n\n *** Executing show version *** \n\n")
cli_command = "show version"
cli.executep(cli_command)

print("\n\n *** Configuring a Loopback Interface *** \n\n")
cli.configurep(["interface loop 100", "ip address 10.10.10.10 255.255.255.255", "end"])

print("\n\n *** Executing show ip interface brief *** \n\n")
cli_command = "sh ip int brief"
cli.executep(cli_command)

print("\n\n *** ZTP Day0 Python Script Execution Complete *** \n\n"
```
Zero-Touch Provisioning Boot Log

The following sample Zero-Touch Provisioning boot log displays that Guest Shell is successfully enabled, the Python script is downloaded to the Guest Shell, and the Guest Shell executes the downloaded Python script and configures the device for Day Zero.

% failed to initialize nvram
! <This message indicates that the startup configuration is absent on the device. This is the first indication that the Day Zero work flow is going to start.>

This product contains cryptographic features and is subject to United States and local country laws governing import, export, transfer and use. Delivery of Cisco cryptographic products does not imply third-party authority to import, export, distribute or use encryption. Importers, exporters, distributors and users are responsible for compliance with U.S. and local country laws. By using this product you agree to comply with applicable laws and regulations. If you are unable to comply with U.S. and local laws, return this product immediately.

A summary of U.S. laws governing Cisco cryptographic products may be found at: http://www.cisco.com/wwl/export/crypto/tool/stqrg.html

If you require further assistance please contact us by sending email to export@cisco.com.

cisco ISR4451-X/K9 (2RU) processor with 7941237K/6147K bytes of memory.
Processor board ID FJC1950D091
4 Gigabit Ethernet interfaces
32768K bytes of non-volatile configuration memory.
16777216K bytes of physical memory.
7341807K bytes of flash memory at bootflash:.
0K bytes of WebUI ODM Files at webui:.

%INIT: waited 0 seconds for NVRAM to be available

--- System Configuration Dialog ---

Would you like to enter the initial configuration dialog? [yes/no]: %
!!<DO NOT TOUCH. This is Zero-Touch Provisioning>>
Generating 2048 bit RSA keys, keys will be non-exportable...
[OK] (elapsed time was 1 seconds)
The process for the command is not responding or is otherwise unavailable
The process for the command is not responding or is otherwise unavailable
The process for the command is not responding or is otherwise unavailable
The process for the command is not responding or is otherwise unavailable
The process for the command is not responding or is otherwise unavailable
The process for the command is not responding or is otherwise unavailable
The process for the command is not responding or is otherwise unavailable
The process for the command is not responding or is otherwise unavailable
The process for the command is not responding or is otherwise unavailable
The process for the command is not responding or is otherwise unavailable
The process for the command is not responding or is otherwise unavailable
The process for the command is not responding or is otherwise unavailable
Guestshell enabled successfully

*** Sample ZTP Day0 Python Script ***

*** Configuring a Loopback Interface ***
SUCCESS: interface loop 100
SUCCESS: ip address 10.10.10.10 255.255.255.255
SUCCESS: end

*** Executing show ip interface brief ***

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>IP-Address</th>
<th>OK? Method</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Protocol</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0/0/0</td>
<td>unassigned</td>
<td>YES unset</td>
<td>down</td>
<td>down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0/0/1</td>
<td>unassigned</td>
<td>YES unset</td>
<td>down</td>
<td>down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0/0/2</td>
<td>unassigned</td>
<td>YES unset</td>
<td>down</td>
<td>down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0/0/3</td>
<td>192.168.1.246</td>
<td>YES DHCP</td>
<td>up</td>
<td>up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0</td>
<td>192.168.1.246</td>
<td>YES DHCP</td>
<td>up</td>
<td>up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loopback100</td>
<td>10.10.10.10</td>
<td>YES TFTP</td>
<td>up</td>
<td>up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*** ZTP Day0 Python Script Execution Complete ***

Press RETURN to get started!

The Day Zero provisioning is complete, and the IOS prompt is accessible.

Feature Information for Zero-Touch Provisioning

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.
Table 2: Feature Information for Zero-Touch Provisioning

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Zero-Touch Provisioning     | Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a  
Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1b  
Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.7.1  
Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.2 | To address network provisioning challenges, Cisco introduces a zero-touch provisioning model.  
In Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a, this feature was implemented on the following platforms:  
• Cisco Catalyst 3650 Series Switches  
• Cisco Catalyst 3850 Series Switches  
• Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches  
• Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches  
In Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1b, this feature was implemented on the following platform:  
• Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Router models with a minimum of 8 GB RAM to support Guest Shell.  
In Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.7.1, this feature was implemented on the following platform:  
• Cisco ASR 1000 Aggregation Services Routers (ASR1001-X, ASR1001-HX, ASR1002-X, ASR1002-HX)  
In Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.2, this feature was implemented on the following platform:  
• Cisco ASR 1000 Series Aggregation Services Routers (ASR1004, ASR1006, ASR1006-X, ASR1009-X, ASR1013) |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Zero-Touch Provisioning: HTTP Download           | Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1 | Zero-Touch Provisioning supports HTTP and TFTP file download.  
In Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.8.1, this feature was implemented on the following platforms:  
  • Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers  
  • Cisco Catalyst 3650 Series Switches  
  • Cisco Catalyst 3850 Series Switches  
  • Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches  
  • Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches  
In Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a, this feature was implemented on Cisco Catalyst 9500-High Performance Series Switches |
| DHCPv6 Support for Zero-Touch Provisioning       | Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.1  | In Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a, this feature was implemented on the following platforms  
  • Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches  
  • Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches |
iPXE

iPXE is an enhanced version of the Pre-boot eXecution Environment (PXE), which is an open standard for network booting. This module describes the iPXE feature and how to configure it.

- Information About iPXE, on page 25
- How to Configure iPXE, on page 33
- Configuration Examples for iPXE, on page 35
- Troubleshooting Tips for iPXE, on page 38
- Additional References for iPXE, on page 39
- Feature Information for iPXE, on page 39

Information About iPXE

About iPXE

iPXE is an enhanced version of the Pre-boot eXecution Environment (PXE), which is an open standard for network booting.

iPXE netboot provides:

- IPv4 and IPv6 protocols
- FTP/HTTP/TFTP boot image download
- Embedded scripts into the image
- Stateless and stateful address auto-configuration (SLAAC) using Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol Version 4 (DHCPv4) and/or DHCPv6, boot URI, and parameters for DHCPv6 options depending on the IPv6 router advertisement.

Netboot Requirements

The following are the primary requirements for netbooting:

- DHCP server with proper configuration.
- Boot image available on the FTP/HTTP/TFTP server.
- Device configured to boot from a network-based source.
iPXE Overview

Network bootloaders support booting from a network-based source. The bootloaders boot an image located on an HTTP, FTP, or TFTP server. A network boot source is detected automatically by using an iPXE-like solution.

iPXE enables network boot for a device that is offline. The following are the three types of boot modes:

- **iPXE Timeout**—Boots through iPXE network boot. Configures a timeout in seconds for iPXE network boot by using the IPXE_TIMEOUT rommon variable. Use the `boot ipxe timeout` command to configure iPXE timeout. When the timeout expires, device boot is activated.

- **iPXE Forever**—Boots through iPXE network boot. The device sends DHCP requests forever, when the `boot ipxe forever` command is configured. This is an iPXE-only boot (which means that the bootloader will not fall back to a device boot or a command prompt, because it will send DHCP requests forever until it receives a valid DHCP response.)

- **Device**—Boots using the local device BOOT line configured on it. When device boot is configured, the configured IPXE_TIMEOUT rommon variable is ignored. You can activate device boot as specified below:
  - If BOOTMODE=ipxe-forever, device boot is not activated without user intervention (this is possible only if ENABLE_BREAK=yes).
  - If BOOTMODE=ipxe-timeout, device boot is activated when the specified IPXE_TIMEOUT variable (in seconds) has elapsed.
  - If BOOTMODE=device, device boot is activated. This is the default active mode.
  - Device boot can also be activated through the CLI.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device boot is the default boot mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

Manual boot is another term used in this document. Manual boot is a flag that determines whether to do a rommon reload or not. When the device is in rommon mode, you have to manually issue the `boot` command.

If manual boot is set to YES, the rommon or device prompt is activated. If manual boot is set to NO, the autoboot variable is executed; this means that the value set in the BOOT variable is followed.

The following section describes how an iPXE bootloader works:
1. Bootloader sends a DHCP discover message, and when the server replies, the Bootloader sends a DHCP request.

2. The DHCP response includes the IP address and boot file name. The boot file name indicates that the boot image is to be retrieved from a TFTP server (tftp://server/filename), FTP server (ftp://userid:password@server/filename), or an HTTP server (http://server/filename).

3. Bootloader downloads and boots the image from the network source.

4. If no DHCP response is received, the bootloader keeps sending DHCP requests forever or for a specified period of time, based on the boot mode configured. When a timeout occurs, the bootloader reverts to a device-based boot. The device sends DHCP requests forever only if the configured boot mode is ipxe-forever. If the ipxe-timeout boot mode command is configured, DHCP requests are sent for the specified amount of time, and when the timeout expires, device boot mode is activated.

---

**Note**

Because the current iPXE implementation works only via the management port (GigabitEthernet0/0), DHCP requests sent through the front panel ports are not supported.

When using a static network configuration to network boot, ROMMON uses the following environment variables (and all of them are required):

- **BOOT**—URLs separated by semicolon (;) to boot from.
- **IP_ADDRESS**—Statically assigned IP address of a device.
- **DEFAULT_GATEWAY**—Default gateway of the device.
- **IP_SUBNET_MASK**—IPv4 or IPv6 prefix information.
- IPv4—Subnet mask of the device in the format WWW.XXX.YYY.ZZZ eg. 255.255.255.0.
IPv6—a subnet prefix length of the device in the format NNN. Example: 64 or 112.

When manual boot is disabled, the bootloader determines whether to execute a device boot or a network boot based on the configured value of the rommon iPXES variable. Irrespective of whether manual boot is enabled or disabled, the bootloader uses the BOOTMODE variable to determine whether to do a device boot or a network boot. Manual boot means that the user has configured the boot manual switch command. When manual boot is disabled, and when the device reboots, the boot process starts automatically.

When iPXES is disabled, the contents of the existing BOOT variable are used to determine how to boot the device. The BOOT variable may contain a network-based uniform resource identifier (URI) (for example, http://, ftp://, tftp://), and a network boot is initiated; however, DHCP is not used to get the network image path. The static network configuration is taken from the IP_ADDRESS, DEFAULT_GATEWAY, and IP_SUBNET_MASK variables. The BOOT variable may also contain a device filesystem-based path, in which case, a device filesystem-based boot is initiated.

The DHCP server used for booting can identify a device through the Product ID (PID) (available in DHCP Option 60), chassis serial number (available in DHCP option 61), or the MAC address of the device. The show inventory and show switch commands also display these values on the device.

The following is sample output from the show inventory command:

```
Device# show inventory
NAME:“c38xx Stack”, DESCR:“c38xx Stack”
PID:WS-3850-12X-48U-L, VID:V01 , SN: F0C1911V01A
NAME:"Switch 1", DESCR:"WS-C3850-12X48U-L"
PID:WS-C3850-12X48U-L, VID:V01 , SN:F0C1911V01A
NAME:"Switch1 -Power Supply B", DESCR:"Switch1 -Power Supply B”
PID:PWR-C1-1100WAC, VID:V01, SN:LIT1847146Q
```

The following is sample output from the show switch command:

```
Device# show switch
Switch/Stack Mac Address : 046c.9d01.7d80 - Local Mac Address
Mac persistency wait time: Indefinite

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Switch#</th>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Mac Address</th>
<th>Priority</th>
<th>Version</th>
<th>State</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Member</td>
<td>046c.9d1e.1a00</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>Ready</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Standby</td>
<td>046c.9d01.7d80</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>Ready</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*3</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td>f9b7.e24e.9a00</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>P2B</td>
<td>Ready</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

The following rommon variables should be configured for iPXES:

- **BOOTMODE=ipxe-forever | ipxe-timeout | device**
- **IPXE_TIMEOUT=seconds**

**IPv6 iPXES Network Boot**

This illustration displays how IPv6 iPXES network boot works on a Cisco device:
The four elements in the above illustration are described below:

- **IPv6 Booting Device**—The device that is booting through iPXE boot.

- **Supporting Device**—A Cisco device that is configured with an IPv6 address to generate Router Advertisement (RA) messages.

**Note**

In this illustration, the IPv6 booting device, the supporting device, and the DHCP server are on the same subnet. However, if the supporting device and the DHCP server are on different subnets, then there must be a relay agent in the network.

- **DHCP server**—Any DHCP server.

- **Web server**—Any web server.

This section describes the IPv6 iPXE boot process:

1. The device sends a router solicitation Internet Control Message Protocol IPv6 (ICMPv6) type 133 packet to the IPv6 device on the local subnet.

2. The IPv6 device on the local subnet replies with a router advertisement (RA) message, ICMPv6 type 134 packet. The device that sent the router solicitation message, gets the default router and prefix information for Stateless Address AutoConfiguration (SLAAC) address completion from the RA packet.
3. The device sends a DHCPv6 solicit message to the multicast group address of ff02::1:2 for all DHCP agents.

The following sample displays the fields in a DHCPv6 solicit packet during iPXE boot:

```
DHCPv6
Message type: Solicit (1)
Transaction ID: 0x36f5f1
Client Identifier
Vendor Class
Identity Association for Non-Temporary Address
Option Request
User Class
Vendor-specific Information
```

The DHCPv6 solicit message contains the following information:

- DHCP Unique Identifier (DUID) Identifies the client. iPXE supports DUID-EN. EN stands for Enterprise Number, and this DUID is based on the vendor-assigned unique identifier.

- DHCP and DHCPv6 Options

4. If the DHCPv6 server is configured, it responds with a DHCPv6 advertise packet that contains the 128 Bit IPv6 address, the boot file Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), the Domain Name System (DNS) server and domain search list, and the client and server IDs. The client ID contains the DUID of the client (In this illustration, the IPv6 Booting Device), and the Server ID contains the DUID of the DHCPv6 server.

5. The client then sends a DHCPv6 request packet to the multicast group address ff02::1:2, requesting for advertised parameters.

6. The server responds with a unicast DHCPv6 reply to the Link Local (FE80::) IPv6 address of the client. The following sample displays the fields in a DHCPv6 reply packet:

```
DHCPv6
Message type: Reply (7)
Transaction ID: 0x790950
Identity Association for Non-Temporary Address
Client Identifier
Server Identifier
DNS recursive name server
Boot File URL
Domain Search List
```

7. The device then sends an HTTP GET request to the web server.

8. If the requested image is available at the specified path, the web server responds with an OK for the HTTP GET request.

9. The TCP image transfer copies the image, and the device boots up.

**IPv6 Address Assignment in Rommon Mode**

The DHCP client uses the following order-of-precedence to decide which IPv6 address to use in rommon mode:

1. DHCP Server-assigned address
2. Stateless Address Auto-Configuration (SLAAC) address
3. Link-local address
4. Site-local address

The device uses the DHCP server-assigned address to boot an image. If the DHCPv6 server fails to assign an address, the device tries to use the SLAAC address. If both the DHCP server-assigned address and the SLAAC address are not available, the device uses the link-local address. However, the remote FTP/HTTP/TFTP servers must be on the same local subnet as that of the device for the image copy to succeed.

If the first three addresses are not available, the device uses the automatically generated site-local address.

**Supported ROMMON Variables**

The following ROMMON variables are supported in Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1:

- **BAUD**: Changes the device console BAUD rate to one of the Cisco standard baud rate; such as 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600, 19200, 38400, 57600, and 115200). Any invalid value will be rejected. If the BAUD variable is not set, the default will be 9600. The corresponding CLI command is

- **ENABLE_BREAK**: Enables a rommon break. The default value is NO.

- **MANUAL_BOOT**: If manual boot is set to 1, the rommon or device prompt is activated. If manual boot is set to 0, the device is reloaded; but rommon mode is not activated.

- **SWITCH_IGNORE_STARTUP_CFG**: If the value is 1, it causes the device to ignore the startup configuration. If the value is not set, the value is treated as zero. This is a read-only variable, and can only be modified by IOS.

**iPXE-Supported DHCP Options**

iPXE boot supports the following DHCPv4 and DHCPv6 options in rommon mode.

- **DHCPOption60—Vendor Class Identifier.** This option is populated with the value of the ROMMON environment variable MODEL_NUM.

- **DHCPOption61—Client Identifier.** This option is populated with the value of the ROMMON environment variable SYSTEM_SERIAL_NUM.

- **DHCPOption77—User Class Option.** This option is added to a DHCP Discover packet, and contains the value equal to the string iPXE. This option helps to isolate iPXE DHCP clients looking for an image to boot from a DHCP server.
The following is sample DHCPv4 configuration from the ISC DHCP Server that displays the use of Option 77. The if condition in this sample implies that if Option 77 exists, and is equal to the string iPXE, then advertise the Boot File URI for the image.

```plaintext
host Switch2 {
    fixed-address 192.168.1.20;
    hardware ethernet CC:D8:C1:85:6F:11;
    #user-class = length of string + ASCII code for iPXE
    if exists user-class and option user-class = 04:68:50:58:45 {
        filename "http://192.168.1.146/test-image.bin"
    }
}
```

- **DHCPv6 Option 1**—Client Identifier Option. This option is populated with the value of the ROMMON environment variable SYSTEM_SERIAL_NUM as specified in RFC 3315. The recommended format for the ROMMON environment variable is MAC_ADDR.

- **DHCPv6 Option 15**—User Class Option. This option is the IPv6 User Class option in a DHCPv6 solicit message, and is populated with the string, iPXE. The following sample shows Option 15 defined in the ISC DHCP server:

```plaintext
option dhcp6.user-class code 15 = string;
```

The following is a sample DHCP Server configuration that uses the DHCPv6 Option 15:

```plaintext
# Client-specific parameters
host switch1 {
    #assigning a fixed IPv6 address
    fixed-address6 2001:DB8::CAFE;
    #Client DUID in hexadecimal format contains: DUID-type"2" + "EN=9" + "Chassis serial number"
    host-identifier option dhcp6.client-id 00:02:00:00:00:09:46:4F:43:31:38:33:31:58:31:41:53;
    #User class 00:04:69:50:58:45 is len 4 + "iPXE"
    if option dhcp6.user-class = 00:04:69:50:58:45 {
        option dhcp6.bootfile-url
        "http://[2001:DB8::461/platform-pxe/edi46/test-image.bin"
    }
}
```

- **DHCPv6 Option 16**—Vendor Class Option. Contains the device product ID (PID). The PID can be determined from the output of the `show inventory` command or from the MODEL_NUM rommon variable. Option 16 is not a default option in the ISC DHCP Server and can be defined as follows:

```plaintext
option dhcp6.vendor-class-data code 16 = string;
```

The following sample configuration illustrates the use of DHCPv6 Option 16:

```plaintext
# Source: dhcpd6ConfigPD
host host1-ipxe6-auto-host1 {
    fixed-address6 2001:DB8::1234;
    host-identifier option dhcp6.client-id 00:02:00:00:00:09:46:4F:43:31:38:33:31:58:31:41:53;
    if option dhcp6.vendor-class-data = 00:00:00:09:00:0E:57:53:2D:43:33:38:35:30:2D:32:34:50:2D:4D {
        option dhcp6.bootfile-url
```
"http://[2001:DB8::46]/platform-pxe/host1/17jan-polaris.bin";

The table below describes the significant fields shown in the display.

**Table 3: Sample Output Field Descriptions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dhcp6.client-id</td>
<td>DHCP Unique Identifier (DUID) to identify the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dhcp6.user-class</td>
<td>DHCPv6 Option 15, the User Class option</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dhcp6.vendor-class-data</td>
<td>DHCPv6 Option 16, the Vendor Class option that contains the switch Product ID (PID).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dhcp6.bootfile-url</td>
<td>DHCPv6 Option 6 to request for the Boot File URI</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DHCPv6 Unique Identifiers**

There are three types of DHCPv6 Identifiers (DUIDs) defined by RFC 3315; these are:

- **DUID-LLT**—DUID Link Layer address plus time, this is the link layer address of the network interface connected to the DHCP device plus the time stamp at which it is generated.
- **DUID-EN**—EN stands for Enterprise Number, this DUID is based on vendor-assigned unique ID.
- **DUID-LL**—DUID formed using the Link Layer address of any network interface that is permanently connected to the DHCP (client/server) device.

Cisco devices that support this feature use the DUID-EN (DUID Type 2) to identify the DHCP client (that is the device in the DHCPv6 Solicit packet). Catalyst 9000 Series Switches support not only DUID-EN, but also DUID-LL (DUID Type 3). DUID-EN is the preferred type; however, if switches are unable to create it, then DUID-LL is constructed and used.

**How to Configure iPXE**

**Configuring iPXE**

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. boot ipxe forever [switch number]
4. boot system {switch switch-number | all} {flash: | ftp: | http: | usbflash0 | tftp:}
5. end
### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Step 1 | enable            | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
  - Example:  
  - `Device> enable`  
  - • Enter your password if prompted. |
| Step 2 | configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode. |
| Step 3 | • `boot ipxe forever [switch number]`  
  • `boot ipxe timeout seconds [switch number]` | Configures the BOOTMODE rommon variable.  
  - • The `forever` keyword configures the BOOTMODE rommon variable as IPXE-FOREVER.  
  - • The `timeout` keyword configures the BOOTMODE rommon variable as IPXE-TIMEOUT. |
| Step 4 | `boot system {switch switch-number | all} {flash: | ftp: | http: | usbflash0 | tftp:}` | Boots an image from the specified location.  
  - • You can either use an IPv4 or an IPv6 address for the remote FTP/HTTP/TFTP servers.  
  - • You must enter the IPv6 address inside the square brackets (as per RFC 2732); if not the device will not boot. |
| Step 5 | `end` | Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode. |

### Configuring Device Boot

You can either use the `no boot ipxe` or the `default boot ipxe` command to configure device boot.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `enable`  
2. `configure terminal`  
3. • `no boot ipxe`  
   • `default boot ipxe`  
4. `end`
DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enable Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>Configures device boot. The default boot mode is device boot. Enables default configuration on the device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• no boot ipxe Example: Device(config)# no boot ipxe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• default boot ipxe Example: Device(config)# default boot ipxe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end Example: Device(config)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuration Examples for iPXE

**Example: iPXE Configuration**

The following example shows that iPXE is configured to send DHCP requests forever until the device boots with an image:

Device# configure terminal Device(config)# boot ipxe forever switch 2 Device(config)# end

The following example shows how to configure the boot mode to ipxe-timeout. The configured timeout is 200 seconds. If an iPXE boot failure occurs after the configured timeout expires, the configured device boot is activated. In this example, the configured device boot is http://[2001:db8::1]/image-filename.

Device# configure terminal Device(config)# boot ipxe timeout 200 switch 2 Device(config)# boot system http://[2001:db8::1]/image-filename Device(config)# end
Sample iPXE Boot Logs

The following are sample boot logs from a device in rommon mode. Here, manual boot using the ipxe-timeout command is configured:

```
switch: boot

pxemode:(ipxe-timeout) 60s timeout
00267.887 ipxe_get_booturl: Get URL from DHCP; timeout 60s
00267.953 ipxe_get_booturl: trying DHCPv6 (#1) for 10s
IPv4:
   ip addr 192.168.1.246
   netmask 255.255.255.0
   gateway 192.168.1.46
IPv6:
   link-local addr fe80::ced8:c1ff:fe85:6f00
   site-local addr fec0::ced8:c1ff:fe85:6f00
   DHCP addr 2001:db8::cafe
   router addr fe80::f29e:63ff:fe42:4756
   SLAAC addr 2001:db8::ced8:c1ff:fe85:6f00 /64
Common:
   macaddr cc:d8:c1:85:6f:00
   dns 2001:db8::46
   bootfile
   http://[2001:DB8::46/platform-pxe/edi46/17jan-dev.bin--13103--2017-Feb28--13-54-50
domain cisco.com
00269.321 ipxe_get_booturl: got URL
[http://[2001:DB8::46/platform-pxe/edi46/17jan-dev.bin--13103--2017-Feb-28--13-54-50]
Reading full image into memory .........................................................
Bundle Image

Kernel Address : 0x5377a7e4
Kernel Size : 0x365e3c/3563068
Initramfs Address : 0x53ae0620
Initramfs Size : 0x13a76f0/20608752
Compression Format: mzip
```

Sample DHCPv6 Server Configuration for iPXE

The following is a sample DHCPv6 server configuration taken from an Internet Systems Consortium (ISC) DHCP Server for reference. The lines preceded by the character #, are comments that explain the configuration that follows.

```
Default-least-time 600;
max-lease-time-7200;
log-facility local7;

#Global configuration
#domain search list
option dhcp6.domain-search "cisco.com" ;
#User-defined options:new-name code new-code = definition ;
option dhcp6.user-class code 15 = string ;
option dhcp6.vendor-class-data code 16 = string;

subnet6 2001:db8::/64 { 
    #subnet range for clients requiring an address
    range6 2001:db8::0000:0000:: /64;
```
#DNS server options
option dhcp6.name-servers 2001:db8::46;
}

#Client-specific parameters
host switch1 {
    #assigning a fixed IPv6 address
    fixed-address6 2001:DB8::CAFE;
    #Client DUID in hexadecimal that contains: DUID-type "2" + "EN=9" + "Chassis serial number"
    host-identifier option dhcp6.client-id 00:02:00:00:00:09:46:4F:43:31:38:33:31:58:31:41:53;
    option dhcp6.bootfile-url "http://[2001:DB8::461/platform-pxe/edi46/test-image.bin"
}

For more information on DHCP server commands, see the ISC DHCP Server website.

In this sample configuration, the dhcp6.client-id option identifies the switch, and it is followed by the Enterprise Client DUID. The client DUID can be broken down for understanding as 00:02 + 00:00:00:09 + chassis serial number in hexadecimal format, where 2 refers to the Enterprise Client DUID Type, 9 refers to the reserved code for Cisco’s Enterprise DUID, followed by the ASCII code for the Chassis serial number in hexadecimal format. The chassis serial number for the switch in this sample is FOC1831X1AS.

The Boot File URI is advertised to the switch only using the specified DUID.

The DHCPv6 Vendor Class Option 16 can also be used to identify the switch on the DHCP Server. To define Option 16 as a user-defined option, configure the following:

option dhcp6.vendor-class-data code 16 = string;

The following is a sample DHCP server configuration that identifies the switch based on the DHCPv6 Vendor Class Option 16 that is formed by using the switch Product ID:

# Source: dhcp6ConfigPID
host edi-46-pxe6-auto-edi46 {
    fixed-address6 2001:DB8::1234;
    host-identifier option dhcp6.client-id 00:02:00:00:00:09:46:4F:43:31:38:33:31:58:31:41:53;
    if option dhcp6.vendor-class-data = 00:00:00:09:00:0E:57:53:2D:43:38:35:30:2D:32:45:4C {
        option dhcp6.bootfile-url "http://[2001:DB8::461/platform-pxe/edi46/17jan-dev.bin"
    }
}

In this sample configuration, the dhcp6.vendor-class-data option refers to the DHCPv6 Option 16. In the dhcp6.vendor-class-data, 00:00:00:09 is Cisco’s Enterprise DUID, 0E is the length of the PID, and the rest is the PID in hexadecimal format. The PID can also be found from the output of the show inventory command or from the CFG_MODEL_NUM rommon variable. The PID used in this sample configuration is WS-C3850-24P-L.

DHCPv6 options and DUIDs in the server configuration must be specified in the hexadecimal format, as per the ISC DHCP server guidelines.
Troubleshooting Tips for iPXE

This section provides troubleshooting tips.

- When iPXE boot is enabled on power up, the device first attempts to send a DHCPv6 Solicit message, followed by a DHCPv4 Discover message. If boot mode is `ipxe-forever` the device keeps iterating between the two forever.

- If the boot-mode is iPXE timeout, the device first sends a DHCPv6 Solicit message, and then a DHCPv4 Discover message, and the device falls back to device boot after the timeout expires.

- To interrupt iPXE boot, send a serial break to the console.

  When using a UNIX telnet client, type CTRL-[ and then send break. When you are using a different TELNET client, or you are directly attached to a serial port, sending a break may be triggered by a different keystroke or command.

- If the DHCP server responds with an image, but the DNS server cannot resolve the hostname, enable DNS debugs.

  **Note**: We recommend the use of ISC DHCP server. This feature has not been verified on IOS DHCP.

- To test the HTTP server connectivity, use HTTP copy to copy a small sample file from your HTTP server to your device. For example, at the rommon prompt, enter `copy http://192.168.1.1/test null:` (the flash is normally locked and you need to use the null device for testing) or `http://[2001:db8::99]/test`.

- When manual boot is enabled, and boot mode is ipxe-timeout, the device will not automatically boot on power up. Issue the `boot` command in rommon mode. To automate the boot process on power up, disable manual boot.

- Use the `net6-show` command to display the current IPv6 parameters, including IPv6 addresses and the default router in rommon mode

  **Note**: On Catalyst 9000 Series Switches, use the `net-show` show command.

- Use the `net-dhcp` or the `net6-dhcp` commands based on your configuration. The `net-dhcp` command is a test command for DHCPv4 and the `net6-dhcp` command is for DHCPv6.

  **Note**: On Catalyst 9000 Series Switches, use the `net-dhcp -6` command for DHCPv6.

- Use the `dig` command to resolve names.

  **Note**: On Catalyst 9000 Series Switches, use the `dns-lookup` command to resolve names.
• Enable HTTP debug logs to view the HTTP response code from the web server.

• If Stateless Address Auto-Configuration (SLAAC) addresses are not generated, there is no router that is providing IPv6 RA messages. iPXE boot for IPv6 can still work but only with link or site-local addresses.

### Additional References for iPXE

#### Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Programmability commands</td>
<td>Programmability Command Reference, Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.6.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Standards and RFCs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard/RFC</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RFC 3315</td>
<td>Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol for IPv6 (DHCPv6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFC 3986</td>
<td>Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/support">http://www.cisco.com/support</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Feature Information for iPXE

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn). An account on Cisco.com is not required.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| iPXE              | Cisco IOS XE Denali 16.5.1a | Network Bootloaders support booting from an IPv4/IPv6 device-based or network-based source. A network boot source must be detected automatically by using an iPXE-like solution. This feature was implemented on the following platforms:  
  • Catalyst 3650 Series Switches  
  • Catalyst 3850 Series Switches |
|                   | Cisco IOS XE Denali 16.6.1  | This feature was implemented on the following platforms:  
  • Catalyst 9300 Series Switches  
  • Catalyst 9500 Series Switches |
|                   | Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.6.2 | In Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.6.2, this feature was implemented on Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switches.                                                                                                                   |
|                   | Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.2    | In Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.9.2, this feature was implemented on Cisco Catalyst 9200 Series Switches.                                                                                                                     |
| IPXE IPv6 Support | Cisco IOS XE 16.8.1a        | IPXE supports the IPv6 protocol. This feature was implemented on the following platforms:  
  • Catalyst 9300 Series Switches  
  • Catalyst 9400 Series Switches  
  • Catalyst 9500 Series Switches |
PART II

Shells and Scripting

• Guest Shell, on page 43
• Python API, on page 65
• CLI Python Module, on page 71
• EEM Python Module, on page 77
Guest Shell

Guestshell is a virtualized Linux-based environment, designed to run custom Linux applications, including Python for automated control and management of Cisco devices. It also includes the automated provisioning (Day zero) of systems. This container shell provides a secure environment, decoupled from the host device, in which users can install scripts or software packages and run them.

This module describes Guest Shell and how to enable it.

- Information About the Guest Shell, on page 43
- How to Enable the Guest Shell, on page 51
- Configuration Examples for the Guest Shell, on page 57
- Additional References for Guest Shell, on page 61
- Feature Information for Guest Shell, on page 61

Information About the Guest Shell

Guest Shell Overview

The Guest Shell is a virtualized Linux-based environment, designed to run custom Linux applications, including Python for automated control and management of Cisco devices. Using the Guest Shell, you can also install, update, and operate third-party Linux applications. The guest shell is bundled with the system image and can be installed using the `guestshell enable` Cisco IOS command.

The Guest Shell environment is intended for tools, Linux utilities, and manageability rather than networking.

Guest Shell shares the kernel with the host (Cisco switches and routers) system. Users can access the Linux shell of Guest Shell and update scripts and software packages in the container rootfs. However, users within the Guest Shell cannot modify the host file system and processes.

Guest Shell container is managed using IOx. IOx is Cisco's Application Hosting Infrastructure for Cisco IOS XE devices. IOx enables hosting of applications and services developed by Cisco, partners, and third-party developers in network edge devices, seamlessly across diverse and disparate hardware platforms.

This table provides information about the various Guest Shell capabilities and the supported platforms.
**Table 5: Cisco Guest Shell Capabilities**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Guest Shell Lite (Limited LXC Container)</th>
<th>Guest Shell (LXC Container)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Operating System</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supported Platforms</td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 3650 Series Switches (all models)</td>
<td>• Cisco ISR 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers (Models with a minimum of 8 GB RAM.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supported Platforms</td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 3850 Series Switches (all models)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guest Shell Environment</td>
<td>Montavista CGE7</td>
<td>CentOS 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Python 2.7</td>
<td>Supported (Python V2.7.11)</td>
<td>Supported (Python V2.7.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom Python Libraries</td>
<td>• Cisco Embedded Event Manager</td>
<td>• Cisco Embedded Event Manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom Python Libraries</td>
<td>• Cisco IOS XE CLIs</td>
<td>• Cisco IOS XE CLIs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom Python Libraries</td>
<td>• Ncclient</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supported Rootfs</td>
<td>Busybox, SSH, and Python PIP install</td>
<td>SSH, Yum install, and Python PIP install</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GNU C Compiler</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RPM Install</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
<td>Supported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>MIPS</td>
<td>x86</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Guest Shell Vs Guest Shell Lite**

The Guest Shell container allows users to run their scripts and apps on the system. The Guest Shell container on Intel x86 platforms will be a Linux container (LXC) with a CentOS 7.0 minimal rootfs. You can install other Python libraries such as, Python Version 3.0 during runtime using the Yum utility in CentOS 7.0. You can also install or update python packages using PIP.

The Guest Shell Lite container on MIPS platforms such as, Catalyst 3650 and Catalyst 3850 Series Switches have the Montavista Carrier Grade Edition (CGE) 7.0 rootfs. You can only install or run scripts in Guest Shell Lite. Yum install is not supported on these devices.

**Guest Shell Security**

Cisco provides security to ensure that users or apps in the Guest Shell do not compromise the host system. Guest Shell is isolated from the host kernel, and it runs as an unprivileged container.

**Hardware Requirements for the Guest Shell**

This section provides information about the hardware requirements for supported platforms. The Cisco CSR 1000v and Cisco ISRv (virtual platforms) implement these requirements in the software.
Table 6: Guest Shell Support on Catalyst Switches

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Platforms</th>
<th>Default DRAM</th>
<th>Guest Shell Support</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WS-3650-xxx (all)</td>
<td>4 GB</td>
<td>Supported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WS-3850-xxx (all)</td>
<td>4 GB</td>
<td>Supported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C9300-xx-x (all)</td>
<td>8 GB</td>
<td>Supported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C9500-24Q-x (all)</td>
<td>16 GB</td>
<td>Supported</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The minimum system requirement for Catalyst 3850 Series Switches is 4 GB DRAM.

Table 7: Guest Shell Support on ISR 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Platform</th>
<th>Default DRAM</th>
<th>Guest Shell Support</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ISR 4221</td>
<td>4GB</td>
<td>Not Supported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISR 4321</td>
<td>4 GB</td>
<td>Not Supported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISR 4331</td>
<td>8 GB</td>
<td>Supported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISR 4331</td>
<td>16 GB</td>
<td>Supported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISR 4351</td>
<td>8 GB</td>
<td>Supported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISR 4351</td>
<td>16 GB</td>
<td>Supported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISR 4431</td>
<td>8 GB</td>
<td>Supported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISR 4431</td>
<td>16 GB</td>
<td>Supported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISR 4451</td>
<td>8 GB</td>
<td>Supported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISR 4451</td>
<td>16 GB</td>
<td>Supported</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The minimum system requirement for ISR 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers is 8 GB DRAM.

Virtual-service installed applications and Guest Shell container cannot co-exist.

The minimum system requirement for CSR 1000v and ISRv is 4GB RAM.

Guest Shell Storage Requirements

On Catalyst 3650 and Catalyst 3850 Series Switches, Guest Shell can only be installed on the flash filesystem. Bootflash of Catalyst 3850 Series Switches require 75 MB free disk space for Guest Shell to install successfully.

On Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers, the Guest Shell is installed on the Network Interface Module (NIM)-Service Set Identifier (SSD) (hard disk), if available. If the hard disk drive is available, there
is no option to select bootflash to install Guest Shell. Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers require 1100 MB free hard disk (NIM-SSID) space for Guest Shell to install successfully.

For Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers and ASR 1000 routers (when an optional hard disk has been added to that router) you can only do resource resizing if you have installed the Guest Shell on the hard disk and inserted the hard disk into the router.

Note
A Guest Shell installed via bootflash does not allow you to do resource resizing using application hosting configuration commands.)

During Guest Shell installation, if enough hard disk space is not available, an error message is displayed. The following is a sample error message on an ISR 4000 Series router:

```
% Error:guestshell_setup.sh returned error:255, message:
Not enough storage for installing guestshell. Need 1100 MB free space.
```

Bootflash or hard disk space can be used to store additional data by Guest Shell. On Cisco Catalyst 3850 Series Switches, Guest Shell has 18 MB of storage space available and on Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers, Guest Shell has 800 MB of storage space available. Because Guest Shell accesses the bootflash, it can use the entire space available.

### Table 8: Resources Available to Guest Shell and Guest Shell Lite

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Resource</th>
<th>Default</th>
<th>Minimum/Maximum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CPU</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>1%/100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note</td>
<td>1% is not standard; 800 CPU units/total system CPU units.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Memory</td>
<td>256 MB</td>
<td>256/256 MB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>512 MB (Cisco CSR 1000v)</td>
<td>512/512 MB (Cisco CSR 1000v)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Accessing Guest Shell on a Device**

Network administrators can use IOS commands to manage files and utilities in the Guest Shell.

During the Guest Shell installation, SSH access is setup with a key-based authentication. The access to the Guest Shell is restricted to the user with the highest privilege (15) in IOS. This user is granted access into the Linux container as the guestshell Linux user, who is a sudoer, and can perform all root operations. Commands executed through the Guest Shell are executed with the same privilege that a user has when logged into the IOS terminal.

At the Guest Shell prompt, you can execute standard Linux commands.

**Accessing Guest Shell Through the Management Port**

By default, Guest Shell allows applications to access the management network. Users cannot change the management VRF networking configurations from inside the Guest Shell.
For platforms without a management port, a VirtualPortGroup can be associated with Guest Shell in the IOS configuration. For more information, see the Sample VirtualPortGroup Configuration section.

**Note**

Stacking with Guest Shell

When Guest Shell is installed, a gs_script directory is automatically created in the flash filesystem. This directory is synchronized across stack members. During a switchover, only contents of the gs_script directory are synchronized across all stack members. To preserve data during high availability switchover, place data in this directory.

During a high availability switchover, the new active device creates its own Guest Shell installation; the old filesystem is not maintained. The Guest Shell state is maintained during a switchover.

**IOx Overview**

IOx is a Cisco-developed end-to-end application framework that provides application hosting capabilities for different application types on Cisco network platforms. The Cisco Guest Shell, a special container deployment, is one such application, that is useful in system deployment/use.

IOx facilitates the life-cycle management of app and data exchange by providing a set of services that helps developers to package pre-built apps, and host them on a target device. IOx life-cycle management includes distribution, deployment, hosting, starting, stopping (management), and monitoring of apps and data. IOx services also include app distribution and management tools that help users discover and deploy apps to the IOx framework.

App hosting provides the following features:

- Hides network heterogeneity.
- IOx application programming interfaces (APIs), remotely manage the life cycle of applications hosted on a device.
- Centralized app life-cycle management.
- Cloud-based developer experience.

**IOx Tracing and Logging Overview**

IOx tracing and logging feature allows guest application to run separately on the host device that can help reporting the logging and tracing of the data to the host. The tracing data is saved into IOx trace log, and the logging data is saved into IOS syslog on the host device.

You can redirect the tracing data to the appropriate storage device on the host device which can help in debugging of guest application.

**IOXMAN Structure**

Each guest application, a system LXC or a KVM instance is configured with its own syslogd and logfiles stored within a visible file system and are not accessible to the host device. To support logging data to IOS syslog and tracing data to IOx trace log on the host, two serial devices, /dev/ttyS2 and /dev/ttyS3, are designated on the guest application for delivering data to the host as shown in the following figure.
Figure 2: IOXMAN Structure

IOXMAN is a process to establish the tracing infrastructure to provide logging or tracing services for guest application, except Libvert that emulates serial devices. IOXMAN is based on the lifecycle of the guest application to enable and disable tracing service, to send logging data to IOS syslog, to save tracing data to IOx tracelog, and to maintain IOx tracelog for each guest application.

Logging and Tracing System Flow

The following sections describes how the IOx logging and tracing works:

**LXC Logging**

1. Guest OS enables /dev/ttyS2 on Guest application.
2. Guest application writes data to /dev/ttyS2.
3. Libvert emulates /dev/ttyS2 to /dev/pts/x on the host.
4. IOXMAN gets the emulated serial device, /dev/pts/x from the XML file.
5. IOXMAN listens and reads available data from /dev/pts/x, sets the severity for the message, filters, parses and queues the message.

6. Start timer to send the message to /dev/log device on the host using errmsg.

7. Data is saved to IOS syslog.

**KVM Logging**

1. Guest OS enables /dev/ttyS2 on Guest application.

2. Guest application writes data to /dev/ttyS2.

3. Libvert emulates /dev/ttyS2 to /dev/pts/x on the host.

4. IOXMAN gets the emulated TCP path from the XML file.

5. IOXMAN opens an unix socket, and connects to the remote socket.

6. IOXMAN reads available data from the socket, sets the severity for the message, filters, parses, and queues the message.

7. Start timer to send the message to /dev/log device on the host using errmsg.

8. Data is saved to IOS syslog.

**LXC Tracing**

1. Guest OS enables /dev/ttyS3 on Guest application.

2. Configures syslogd to copy message to /dev/ttyS3.

3. Guest application writes data to /dev/ttyS3.

4. Libvert emulates /dev/ttyS3 to /dev/pts/y on the host.

5. IOXMAN gets the emulated serial device, /dev/pts/y from the XML file.

6. IOXMAN listens and reads available data from /dev/pts/y, filters, parses, and saves the message to IOx tracelog.

7. If IOx tracelog is full, IOXMAN rotates the tracelog file to /bootflash/tracelogs.

**KVM Tracing**

1. Guest OS enables /dev/ttyS3 on Guest application.

2. Configures syslogd to copy message to /dev/ttyS3.

3. Guest application writes data to /dev/ttyS3.

4. Libvert emulates /dev/ttyS3 to TCP path on the host.

5. IOXMAN gets the emulated TCP path from the XML file.

6. IOXMAN opens an unix socket, and connects to the remote socket.
7. IOXMAN reads available data from the socket, sets the severity for the message, filters, parses, and saves the message to IOx tracelog.

8. If IOx tracelog is full, IOXMAN rotates the tracelog file to /bootflash/tracelogs.

Logging and Tracing of Messages

The following sections explain the logging and tracing of messages into IOS syslog.

Logging Messages in IOS Syslog

For any logging messages received from the Guest Application, IOXMAN sets the severity of the message to NOTICE by default, before sending it to IOS syslog. When a message is received by IOSd, it is displayed on the console and saved on the IOS syslog in the following message format.

*Apr 7 00:48:21.911: %IM-5-IOX_INST_NOTICE:ioxman: IOX SERVICE guestshell LOG: Guestshell test

In order to comply with IOS syslog, IOXMAN does support severity for logging message. To report logging message with severity, Guest Application needs to append the header to the front of the message.

[a123b234,version,severity]

a123b234 is magic number.
Severity: CRIT is 2
ERR is 3
WARN is 4
NOTICE is 5
INFO is 6
DEBUG is 7

Following is an example of a message log:

echo “[a123b234,1,2]Guestshell failed” > /dev/ttyS2

Perform the following steps to report logging data from Guest Application to IOS syslog:

1. If you are using C programming, use write() to send logging data to host.

```c
#define SYSLOG_TEST "syslog test"
int fd;
fd = open("/dev/ttyS2", O_WRONLY);
write(fd, SYSLOG_TEST, strlen(SYSLOG_TEST));
close(fd);
```

2. If you are using Shell console, use echo to send logging data to host.

```bash
echo "syslog test" > /dev/ttyS2
```

Tracing Message to IOx Tracelog

Perform the following steps to report tracing messages from Guest Application to IOx tracelog:

1. If you are using C programming, use write() to send tracing message to host.

```c
```
2. If you are using C programming, use \texttt{syslog()} to send tracing message to host.

```c
#define SYSLOG_TEST "tracelog test"
int fd;
    fd = open("/dev/ttyS3", O_WRONLY);
    write(fd, SYSLOG_TEST, strlen(SYSLOG_TEST));
    close(fd);
```

3. If you are using Shell console, use \texttt{echo} to send tracing data to host.

```bash
echo "tracelog test" > /dev/ttyS3
```

or

```bash
logger "tracelog test"
```

\textbf{Example: Guest Shell Networking Configuration}

For Guest Shell networking, the following configurations are required.

- Configure Domain Name System (DNS)
- Configure proxy settings
- Configure YUM or PIP to use proxy settings

\textbf{How to Enable the Guest Shell}

\textbf{Managing IOx}

\textbf{Before you begin}

IOx takes up to two minutes to start. CAF, IOXman, and Libirtd services must be running to enable Guest Shell successfully.

\textbf{SUMMARY STEPS}

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. iox
4. exit
5. show iox-service
6. show app-hosting list
**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>iox</td>
<td>Configures IOx services.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# iox</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>exit</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td>show iox-service</td>
<td>Displays the status of the IOx service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# show iox-service</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 6</td>
<td>show app-hosting list</td>
<td>Displays the list of app-hosting services enabled on the device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device# show app-hosting list</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**What to do next**

The following is sample output from the `show iox-service` command on an ISR 4000 Series Router:

```
Device# show iox-service

Virtual Service Global State and Virtualization Limits:

Infrastructure version : 1.7
Total virtual services installed : 0
Total virtual services activated : 0

Machine types supported : KVM, LXC
Machine types disabled : none

Maximum VCPUs per virtual service : 6
Resource virtualization limits:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Quota</th>
<th>Committed</th>
<th>Available</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>system CPU (%)</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>memory (MB)</td>
<td>10240</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>10240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bootflash (MB)</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>harddisk (MB)</td>
<td>20000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>18109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volume-group (MB)</td>
<td>190768</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>170288</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```
Managing the Guest Shell

Before you begin

IOx must be configured and running for Guest Shell access to work. If IOx is not configured, a message to configure IOx is displayed. Removing IOx removes access to the Guest Shell, but the rootfs remains unaffected.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. guestshell enable
   • guestshell enable [VirtualPortGroup port-number guest-ip ip-address gateway gateway-ip netmask netmask [name-server ip-address]]
3. guestshell run linux-executable
4. guestshell run bash
5. guestshell disable
6. guestshell destroy

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Purpose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>Displays the Guest Shell service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• guestshell enable</td>
<td>Enables the Guest Shell service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• guestshell enable [VirtualPortGroup port-number guest-ip ip-address gateway gateway-ip netmask netmask [name-server ip-address]]</td>
<td>Enables connectivity to the front panel ports.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# guestshell enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# guestshell enable VirtualPortGroup 0 guest-ip 192.168.35.2 gateway 192.168.35.1 netmask 255.255.255.0 name-server 10.1.1.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guestshell run linux-executable</td>
<td>Executes or runs a Linux program in the Guest Shell.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# guestshell run python</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guestshell run bash</td>
<td>Starts a Bash shell to access the Guest Shell.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# guestshell run bash</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guestshell disable</td>
<td>Disables the Guest Shell service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# guestshell disable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Step 2

- **guestshell enable**
- **guestshell enable** [VirtualPortGroup port-number guest-ip ip-address gateway gateway-ip netmask netmask [name-server ip-address]]

**Example:**

- Device# guestshell enable
- Device# guestshell enable VirtualPortGroup 0 guest-ip 192.168.35.2 gateway 192.168.35.1 netmask 255.255.255.0 name-server 10.1.1.1

**Note:**

- The **guestshell enable** command without any arguments uses the management virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) instance for networking.
- The **guestshell enable** command with arguments, is only supported in Cisco IOS XE 16.6.x or earlier.
- When using VirtualPortGroups (VPGs) for front panel networking, the VPG must be configured first.
- The guest IP address and the gateway IP address must be in the same subnet.
- Front panel networking is not supported for: Cisco Catalyst 3650 Series Switches, Cisco Catalyst 3850 Series Switches, Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches, and Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches. The reason for this is that although the **guestshell enable** command with arguments can be entered, you cannot then configure NAT on these platforms and therefore networking does not work. Only the management mode is supported.

### Step 3

- guestshell run linux-executable

**Example:**

- Device# guestshell run python

### Step 4

- guestshell run bash

**Example:**

- Device# guestshell run bash

### Step 5

- guestshell disable

**Example:**

- Device# guestshell disable
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>guestshell destroy</td>
<td>Deactivates and uninstalls the Guest Shell service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# guestshell destroy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Enabling and Running the Guest Shell**

The `guestshell enable` command installs Guest Shell. This command is also used to reactivate Guest Shell, if it is disabled.

When Guest Shell is enabled and the system is reloaded, Guest Shell remains enabled.

**Note**

IOx must be configured before the `guestshell enable` command is used.

The `guestshell run bash` command opens the Guest Shell bash prompt. Guest Shell must already be enabled for this command to work.

**Note**

If the following message is displayed on the console, it means that IOx is not enabled; check the output of the `show iox-service` command to view the status of IOx.

**Disabling and Destroying the Guest Shell**

The `guestshell disable` command shuts down and disables Guest Shell. When Guest Shell is disabled and the system is reloaded, Guest Shell remains disabled.

The `guestshell destroy` command removes the rootfs from the flash filesystem. All files, data, installed Linux applications and custom Python tools and utilities are deleted, and are not recoverable.

**Managing the Guest Shell using Application Hosting**

**Note**

IOx must be configured and running for Guest Shell access to work. If IOx is not configured, a message to configure IOx is displayed. Removing IOx removes access to the Guest Shell, but the rootfs remains unaffected.

**Note**

Use this procedure (Managing the Guest Shell using Application Hosting) to enable the Guest Shell in Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.7.1 or later. For Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.6.x or earlier, use the procedure in Managing the Guest Shell, on page 53.

Router(config)# interface GigabitEthernet1
For front panel networking, you must configure the GigabitEthernet and VirtualPortGroup interfaces as shown above. The guest shell uses a virtualportgroup as the source interface to connect to the outside network through NAT.

The following commands are used to configure inside NAT. They allow the Guest Shell to reach the internet; for example, to obtain Linux software updates:
ip nat inside source list
ip access-list standard permit

The `guestshell run` command in the example above, runs a python executable. You can also use the `guestshell run` command to run other Linux executables; for example, see the example `guestshell run bash` command, which starts a Bash shell or the `guestshell disable` command which shuts down and disables the Guest Shell. If the system is later reloaded, the Guest Shell remains disabled.

## Accessing the Python Interpreter

Python can be used interactively or Python scripts can be run in the Guest Shell. Use the `guestshell run python` command to launch the Python interpreter in Guest Shell and open the Python terminal.

### Note

The `guestshell run` command is the IOS equivalent of running Linux executables, and when running a Python script from IOS, specify the absolute path. The following example shows how to specify the absolute path for the command:

```
Guestshell run python /flash/sample_script.py parameter1 parameter2
```

## Configuration Examples for the Guest Shell

### Example: Managing the Guest Shell

The following example shows how to enable Guest Shell on a Catalyst 3850 Series Switch:

```
Device> enable
Device# guestshell enable
Management Interface will be selected if configured
Please wait for completion
Guestshell enabled successfully

Device# guestshell run python
Python 2.7.11 (default, Feb 21 2017, 03:39:40)
[GCC 5.3.0] on linux2
Type "help", "copyright", "credits" or "license" for more information.

Device# guestshell run bash
[guestshell@guestshell ~]$

Device# guestshell disable
Guestshell disabled successfully

Device# guestshell destroy
```
Sample VirtualPortGroup Configuration

When using the VirtualPortGroup interface for Guest Shell networking, the VirtualPortGroup interface must have a static IP address configured. The front port interface must be connected to the Internet and Network Address Translation (NAT) must be configured between the VirtualPortGroup and the front panel port.

The following is a sample VirtualPortGroup configuration:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface VirtualPortGroup 0
Device(config-if)# ip address 192.168.35.1 255.255.255.0
Device(config-if)# ip nat inside
Device(config-if)# no mop enabled
Device(config-if)# no mop sysid
Device(config-if)# exit
Device(config)# interface GigabitEthernet 0/0/3
Device(config-if)# ip address 10.0.12.19 255.255.0.0
Device(config-if)# ip nat outside
Device(config-if)# negotiation auto
Device(config-if)# exit
Device(config)# ip route 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 10.0.0.1
Device(config)# exit
```

Example: Guest Shell Usage

From the Guest Shell prompt, you can run Linux commands. The following example shows the usage of some Linux commands.

```
[guestshell@guestshell~]$ pwd
/home/guestshell

[guestshell@guestshell~]$ whoami
guestshell

[guestshell@guestshell~]$ uname -a
Linux guestshell 3.10.101.cge-rt110 #1 SMP Sat Feb 11 00:33:02 PST 2017 mips64 GNU/Linux
```
Catalyst 3650 and Catalyst 3850 Series Switches have a defined set of Linux executables that are provided by BusyBox and Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers have commands provided by CentOS Linux release 7.1.1503.

The following example shows the usage of the `dohost` command on a Catalyst 3850 Series Switch.

```
guestshell@guestshell ~]$ dohost "show version"

Cisco IOS Software [Everest], Catalyst L3 Switch Software [CAT3K_CAA-UNIVERSAL-K9-M], Experimental Version 16.5.2017200014[v165_throttle-BLD-BLD_V165_THROTTLE_LATEST_20170531_192849 132]
```

The `dohost` command requires the `ip http server` command to be configured on the device.

---

**Example: Guest Shell Networking Configuration**

For Guest Shell networking, the following configurations are required.

- Configure Domain Name System (DNS)
- Configure proxy settings
- Configure YUM or PIP to use proxy settings

**Sample DNS Configuration for Guest Shell**

The following is a sample DNS configuration for Guest Shell:

```
guestshell@guestshell ~]$ cat /etc/resolv.conf
nameserver 192.0.2.1

Other Options:
guestshell@guestshell ~]$ cat /etc/resolv.conf
domain cisco.com
search cisco.com
nameserver 192.0.2.1
search cisco.com
nameserver 198.51.100.1
nameserver 172.16.0.6
domain cisco.com
nameserver 192.0.2.1
nameserver 172.16.0.6
nameserver 192.168.255.254
```
Example: Configuring Proxy Environment Variables

If your network is behind a proxy, configure proxy variables in Linux. If required, add these variables to your environment.

The following example shows how to configure your proxy variables:

[guestshell@guestshell ~]$ cat /bootflash/proxy_vars.sh
export http_proxy=http://proxy.example.com:80/
export https_proxy=http://proxy.example.com:80/
export ftp_proxy=http://proxy.example.com:80/
export no_proxy=example.com
export HTTP_PROXY=http://proxy.example.com:80/
export HTTPS_PROXY=http://proxy.example.com:80/
export FTP_PROXY=http://proxy.example.com:80/
guestshell ~] source /bootflash/proxy_vars.sh

Example: Configuring Yum and PIP for Proxy Settings

The following example shows how to use Yum for setting proxy environment variables:

cat /etc/yum.conf | grep proxy
[guestshell@guestshell~]$ cat/bootflash/yum.conf | grep proxy
proxy=http://proxy.example.com:80/

PIP install picks up environment variable used for proxy settings. Use sudo with -E option for PIP installation. If the environment variables are not set, define them explicitly in PIP commands as shown in following example:

sudo pip --proxy http://proxy.example.com:80/install requests
sudo pip install --trusted-host pypi.example.com --index-url http://pypi.example.com/simple requests

The following example shows how to use PIP install for Python:

Sudo -E pip install requests
[guestshell@guestshell ~]$ python
Python 2.17.11 (default, Feb 3 2017, 19:43:44)
[GCC 4.7.0] on linux2
Type "help", "copyright", "credits" or "license" for more information
>>>import requests
Additional References for Guest Shell

Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Programmability Command Reference, Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.6.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Python module</td>
<td>CLI Python Module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zero-Touch Provisioning</td>
<td>Zero-Touch Provisioning</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MIBs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MIBs Link</th>
<th>MIBs Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To locate and download MIBs for selected platforms, Cisco IOS releases, and feature sets, use Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs">http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/support">http://www.cisco.com/support</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature Information for Guest Shell

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.
Table 9: Feature Information for Guest Shell

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Guest Shell  | Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a | Guest Shell is a secure container that is an embedded Linux environment that allows customers to develop and run Linux and custom Python applications for automated control and management of Cisco switches. It also includes the automated provisioning of systems. This container shell provides a secure environment, decoupled from the host device, in which users can install scripts or software packages and run them. In Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a, this feature was implemented on the following platforms:  
  • Cisco Catalyst 3650 Series Switches  
  • Cisco Catalyst 3850 Series Switches  
  • Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches  
  • Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|              | Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1b |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|              | Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.6.2 | InCisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1b, this feature was implemented on the following platforms:  
  • Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
<p>|              | Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.7.1 | In Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.6.2, this feature was implemented on Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switches. In Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.7.1, this feature was implemented on Cisco CSR 1000v Series. In Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.7.1, for Guest Shell feature, the Logging and Tracing support was implemented on Cisco ASR 1000 Aggregation Services Routers.                                                                                       |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
<td>In Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a, this feature was implemented on Cisco Catalyst 9500-High Performance Series Switches</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Python API

Python programmability supports Python APIs.

- Using Python, on page 65

Using Python

Cisco Python Module

Cisco provides a Python module that provides access to run EXEC and configuration commands. You can display the details of the Cisco Python module by entering the `help()` command. The `help()` command displays the properties of the Cisco CLI module.

The following example displays information about the Cisco Python module:

```
Device# guestshell run python
Python 2.7.5 (default, Jun 17 2014, 18:11:42)
[GCC 4.8.2 20140120 (Red Hat 4.8.2-16)] on linux2
Type "help", "copyright", "credits" or "license" for more information.
>>> >>> from cli import cli, clip, configure, configurep, execute, executep
>>> help(configure)
Help on function configure in module cli:
configure(configuration)
Apply a configuration (set of Cisco IOS CLI config-mode commands) to the device
and return a list of results.

configuration = '''interface gigabitEthernet 0/0
   no shutdown'''

# push it through the Cisco IOS CLI.
try:
    results = cli.configure(configuration)
    print "Success!"
except CLIConfigurationError as e:
    print "Failed configurations:"
    for failure in e.failed:
        print failure

Args:
configuration (str or iterable): Configuration commands, separated by newlines.
```
Returns:
list(ConfigResult): A list of results, one for each line.

Raises:
CLISyntaxError: If there is a syntax error in the configuration.

>>> help(configurep)
Help on function configurep in module cli:

configurep(configuration)
Apply a configuration (set of Cisco IOS CLI config-mode commands) to the device
and prints the result.

configuration = '''interface gigabitEthernet 0/0
no shutdown'''

# push it through the Cisco IOS CLI.
configurep(configuration)

Args:
configuration (str or iterable): Configuration commands, separated by newlines.

>>> help(execute)
Help on function execute in module cli:

execute(command)
Execute Cisco IOS CLI exec-mode command and return the result.

command_output = execute("show version")

Args:
command (str): The exec-mode command to run.

Returns:
str: The output of the command.

Raises:
CLISyntaxError: If there is a syntax error in the command.

>>> help(executep)
Help on function executep in module cli:

executep(command)
Execute Cisco IOS CLI exec-mode command and print the result.

executep("show version")

Args:
command (str): The exec-mode command to run.

>>> help(cli)
Help on function cli in module cli:

cli(command)
Execute Cisco IOS CLI command(s) and return the result.

A single command or a delimited batch of commands may be run. The
delimiter is a space and a semicolon, " ;". Configuration commands must be
in fully qualified form.

output = cli("show version")
output = cli("show version ; show ip interface brief")
output = cli("configure terminal ; interface gigabitEthernet 0/0 ; no shutdown")

Args:
    command (str): The exec or config CLI command(s) to be run.

Returns:
    string: CLI output for show commands and an empty string for
            configuration commands.

Raises:
    errors.cli_syntax_error: if the command is not valid.
    errors.cli_exec_error: if the execution of command is not successful.

>>> help(clip)
Help on function clip in module cli:

clip(command)
    Execute Cisco IOS CLI command(s) and print the result.
    A single command or a delimited batch of commands may be run. The
delimiter is a space and a semicolon, ";". Configuration commands must be
in fully qualified form.

clip("show version")
clip("show version ; show ip interface brief")
clip("configure terminal ; interface gigabitEthernet 0/0 ; no shutdown")

Args:
    command (str): The exec or config CLI command(s) to be run.

---

Cisco Python Module to Execute IOS CLI Commands

**Note**

Guest Shell must be enabled for Python to run. For more information, see the *Guest Shell* chapter.

The Python programming language uses six functions that can execute CLI commands. These functions are available from the Python CLI module. To use these functions, execute the `import cli` command. The `ip http server` command must be enabled for these functions to work.

Arguments for these functions are strings of CLI commands. To execute a CLI command through the Python interpreter, enter the CLI command as an argument string of one of the following six functions:

- `cli.cli(command)`—This function takes an IOS command as an argument, runs the command through the IOS parser, and returns the resulting text. If this command is malformed, a Python exception is raised. The following is sample output from the `cli.cli(command)` function:

  ```python
  >>> import cli
  >>> cli.cli('configure terminal; interface loopback 10; ip address 10.10.10.10 255.255.255.255')
  >>> cli.cli('show clock')
  '\n*18:11:53.989 UTC Mon Mar 13 2017\\n'  
  >>> output=cli.cli('show clock')
  >>> print(output)
  ```
• **cli.clip(command)**—This function works exactly the same as the `cli.cli(command)` function, except that it prints the resulting text to `stdout` rather than returning it. The following is sample output from the `cli.clip(command)` function:

```python
>>> cli
>>> cli.clip('configure terminal; interface loopback 11; ip address 10.11.11.11 255.255.255.255')
*Mar 13 18:42:35.954: %LINEPROTO-5-UPDOWN: Line protocol on Interface Loopback11, changed state to up
*Mar 13 18:42:35.954: %LINK-3-UPDOWN: Interface Loopback11, changed state to up
>>> cli.clip('show clock')
*18:13:35.313 UTC Mon Mar 13 2017
>>> output=cli.clip('show clock')
*18:19:26.824 UTC Mon Mar 13 2017
>>> print(output)
None
```

• **cli.execute(command)**—This function executes a single EXEC command and returns the output; however, does not print the resulting text. No semicolons or newlines are allowed as part of this command. Use a Python list with a for-loop to execute this function more than once. The following is sample output from the `cli.execute(command)` function:

```python
>>> cli.execute("show clock")
'15:11:20.816 UTC Thu Jun 8 2017'
>>> cli.execute('show clock'; 'show ip interface brief')
File "<stdin>", line 1
    cli.execute('show clock'; 'show ip interface brief')
SyntaxError: invalid syntax
>>> 
```

• **cli.executep(command)**—This function executes a single command and prints the resulting text to `stdout` rather than returning it. The following is sample output from the `cli.executep(command)` function:

```python
>>> cli.executep('show clock')
*18:46:28.796 UTC Mon Mar 13 2017
>>> output=cli.executep('show clock')
*18:46:36.399 UTC Mon Mar 13 2017
>>> print(output)
None
```

• **cli.configure(command)**—This function configures the device with the configuration available in commands. It returns a list of named tuples that contain the command and its result as shown below:

```python
[Think: result = (bool(success), original_command, error_information)]
```
The command parameters can be in multiple lines and in the same format that is displayed in the output of the `show running-config` command. The following is sample output from the `cli.configure(command)` function:

```python
>>> cli.configure(["interface GigabitEthernet1/0/7", "no shutdown", "end"])
[ConfigResult(success=True, command='interface GigabitEthernet1/0/7', line=1, output='', notes=None), ConfigResult(success=True, command='no shutdown', line=2, output='', notes=None), ConfigResult(success=True, command='end', line=3, output='', notes=None)]
```

• **cli.configurep(command)**—This function works exactly the same as the `cli.configure(command)` function, except that it prints the resulting text to `stdout` rather than returning it. The following is sample output from the `cli.configurep(command)` function:

```python
>>> cli.configurep(["interface GigabitEthernet1/0/7", "no shutdown", "end"])
Line 1 SUCCESS: interface GigabitEthernet1/0/7
Line 2 SUCCESS: no shut
Line 3 SUCCESS: end
```
Cisco Python Module to Execute IOS CLI Commands
**CLI Python Module**

Python Programmability provides a Python module that allows users to interact with IOS using CLIs.

- Information About Python CLI Module, on page 71
- Additional References for the CLI Python Module, on page 74
- Feature Information for the CLI Python Module, on page 74

**Information About Python CLI Module**

**About Python**

The Cisco IOS XE devices support Python Version 2.7 in both interactive and non-interactive (script) modes within the Guest Shell. The Python scripting capability gives programmatic access to a device’s CLI to perform various tasks and Zero Touch Provisioning or Embedded Event Manager (EEM) actions.

**Python Scripts Overview**

Python run in a virtualized Linux-based environment, Guest Shell. For more information, see the Guest Shell chapter. Cisco provides a Python module that allows user’s Python scripts to run IOS CLI commands on the host device.

**Interactive Python Prompt**

When you execute the `guestshell run python` command on a device, the interactive Python prompt is opened inside the Guest Shell. The Python interactive mode allows users to execute Python functions from the Cisco Python CLI module to configure the device.

The following example shows how to enable the interactive Python prompt:

```
Device# guestshell run python
Python 2.7.5 (default, Jun 17 2014, 18:11:42) [GCC 4.8.2 20140120 (Red Hat 4.8.2-16)] on linux2
Type "help", "copyright", "credits" or "license" for more information.
>>> 
```

Device#
Python Script

Python scripts can run in non-interactive mode by providing the Python script name as an argument in the Python command. Python scripts must be accessible from within the Guest Shell. To access Python scripts from the Guest Shell, save the scripts in bootflash/flash that is mounted within the Guest Shell.

The following sample Python script uses different CLI functions to configure and print show commands:

```
Device# more flash:/sample_script.py

import sys
import cli

intf = sys.argv[1:]
intf = ','.join(intf[0])

print ''

 *** Configuring interface %s with 'configurep' function ***

```

```
cli.configurep("interface loopback55","ip address 10.55.55.55 255.255.255.0","no shut","end")
```

```
print ''

 *** Configuring interface %s with 'configure' function ***

```

```
cmd='interface %s,logging event link-status ,end' % intf
cli.configure(cmd.split(','))
```

```
print ''

 *** Printing show cmd with 'executep' function ***

```

```
cli.executep('show ip interface brief')
```

```
print ''

 *** Printing show cmd with 'execute' function ***

```

```
output = cli.execute('show run interface %s')
```

```
print ''

 *** Configuring interface %s with 'cli' function ***

```

```
cli.cli('config terminal; interface %s; spanning-tree portfast edge default')
```

```
print ''

 *** Configuring interface %s with 'clip' function ***

```

```
cli.clip('show run interface %s')
```

To run a Python script from the Guest Shell, execute the guestshell run python /flash/script.py command at the device prompt.

The following example shows how to run a Python script from the Guest Shell:

```
Device# guestshell run python /flash/sample_script.py loop55

 *** Configuring interface loop55 with 'configurep' function ***

```

```
Line 1 SUCCESS: interface loopback55
Line 2 SUCCESS: ip address 10.55.55.55 255.255.255.0
Line 3 SUCCESS: no shut
Line 4 SUCCESS: end
```

```
 *** Configuring interface %s with 'configure' function ***

```

```
 *** Printing show cmd with 'executep' function ***

```

```
Interface IP-Address OK? Method Status Protocol
```
```
Supported Python Versions

Guest Shell is pre-installed with Python Version 2.7. Guest Shell is a virtualized Linux-based environment, designed to run custom Linux applications, including Python applications for automated control and management of Cisco devices. Platforms with Montavista CGE7 support Python Version 2.7.11, and platforms with CentOS 7 support Python Version 2.7.5.

The following table provides information about Python versions and the supported platforms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 10: Python Version Support</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Python Version</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Platforms with CentOS 7 support the installation of Redhat Package Manager (RPM) from the open source repository.

Updating the Cisco CLI Python Module

The Cisco CLI Python module and EEM module are pre-installed on devices. However, when you update the Python version by using either Yum or prepackaged binaries, the Cisco-provided CLI module must also be updated.
When you update to Python Version 3 on a device that already has Python Version 2, both versions of Python exist on the device. Use one of the following IOS commands to run Python:

- The `guestshell run python2` command enables Python Version 2.
- The `guestshell run python3` command enables Python Version 3.
- The `guestshell run python` command enables Python Version 2.

Use one of the following methods to update the Python version:

- Standalone tarball installation
- PIP install for the CLI module

## Additional References for the CLI Python Module

### Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Guest Shell</td>
<td>Guest Shell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EEM Python Module</td>
<td>Python Scripting in EEM</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/support">http://www.cisco.com/support</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with Cisco products and technologies.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To receive security and technical information about your products, you can</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syndication (RSS) Feeds.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID and password.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Feature Information for the CLI Python Module

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.
Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

### Table 11: Feature Information for the CLI Python Module

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| CLI Python Module    | Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a | Python programmability provides a Python module that allows users to interact with IOS using CLIs. In Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a, this feature was implemented on the following platforms:  
  - Cisco Catalyst 3650 Series Switches  
  - Cisco Catalyst 3850 Series Switches  
  - Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches  
  - Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches |
|                      | Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.6.2 | This feature was implemented on Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switches.                  |
|                      | Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.7.1   | This feature was implemented on the following platforms:  
  - Cisco ASR 1000 Aggregation Services Routers  
  - Cisco CSR 1000v Series Cloud Services Routers |
Feature Information for the CLI Python Module
Embedded Event Manager (EEM) policies support Python scripts. Python scripts can be executed as part of EEM actions in EEM applets.

- Prerequisites for the EEM Python Module, on page 77
- Information About EEM Python Module, on page 77
- How to Configure the EEM Python Policy, on page 80
- Additional References EEM Python Module, on page 85
- Feature Information for EEM Python Module, on page 86

Prerequisites for the EEM Python Module

Guest Shell must be working within the container. Guest Shell is not enabled by default. For more information see the Guest Shell feature.

Information About EEM Python Module

Python Scripting in EEM

Embedded Event Manager (EEM) policies support Python scripts. You can register Python scripts as EEM policies, and execute the registered Python scripts when a corresponding event occurs. The EEM Python script has the same event specification syntax as the EEM TCL policy.

Configured EEM policies run within the Guest Shell. Guest Shell is a virtualized Linux-based environment, designed to run custom Linux applications, including Python for automated control and management of Cisco devices. The Guest Shell container provides a Python interpreter.

EEM Python Package

The EEM Python package can be imported to Python scripts for running EEM-specific extensions.
The EEM Python package is available only within the EEM Python script (The package can be registered with EEM, and has the EEM event specification in the first line of the script.) and not in the standard Python script (which is run using the Python script name).

The Python package includes the following application programming interfaces (APIs):

- Action APIs—Perform EEM actions and have default parameters.
- CLI-execution APIs—Run IOS commands, and return the output. The following are the list of CLI-execution APIs:
  - eem_cli_open()
  - eem_cli_exec()
  - eem_cli_read()
  - eem_cli_read_line()
  - eem_cli_run()
  - eem_cli_run_interactive()
  - eem_cli_read_pattern()
  - eem_cli_write()
  - eem_cli_close()

- Environment variables-accessing APIs—Get the list of built-in or user-defined variables. The following are the environment variables-accessing APIs:
  - eem_event_reqinfo()-Returns the built-in variables list.
  - eem_user_variables()-Returns the current value of an argument.

**Python-Supported EEM Actions**

The Python package (is available only within the EEM script, and not available for the standard Python script) supports the following EEM actions:

- Syslog message printing
- Send SNMP traps
- Reload the box
- Switchover to the standby device
- Run a policy
- Track Object read
- Track Object Set
- Cisco Networking Services event generation
The EEM Python package exposes the interfaces for executing EEM actions. You can use the Python script to call these actions, and they are forwarded from the Python package via Cisco Plug N Play (PnP) to the action handler.

**EEM Variables**

An EEM policy can have the following types of variables:

- **Event-specific built-in variables**—A set of predefined variables that are populated with details about the event that triggered the policy. The `eem_event_reqinfo()` API returns the built-in variables list. These variables can be stored in the local machine and used as local variables. Changes to local variables do not reflect in built-in variables.

- **User-defined variables**—Variables that can be defined and used in policies. The value of these variables can be referred in the Python script. While executing the script, ensure that the latest value of the variable is available. The `eem_user_variables()` API returns the current value of the argument that is provided in the API.

**EEM CLI Library Command Extensions**

The following CLI library commands are available within EEM for the Python script to work:

- **eem_cli_close()**—Closes the EXEC process and releases the VTY and the specified channel handler connected to the command.

- **eem_cli_exec**—Writes the command to the specified channel handler to execute the command. Then reads the output of the command from the channel and returns the output.

- **eem_cli_open**—Allocates a VTY, creates an EXEC CLI session, and connects the VTY to a channel handler. Returns an array including the channel handler.

- **eem_cli_read()**—Reads the command output from the specified CLI channel handler until the pattern of the device prompt occurs in the contents read. Returns all the contents read up to the match.

- **eem_cli_read_line()**—Reads one line of the command output from the specified CLI channel handler. Returns the line read.

- **eem_cli_read_pattern()**—Reads the command output from the specified CLI channel handler until the pattern that is to be matched occurs in the contents read. Returns all the contents read up to the match.

- **eem_cli_run()**—Iterates over the items in the `clist` and assumes that each one is a command to be executed in the enable mode. On success, returns the output of all executed commands and on failure, returns error.

- **eem_cli_run_interactive()**—Provides a sublist to the `clist` which has three items. On success, returns the output of all executed commands and on failure, returns the error. Also uses arrays when possible as a way of making things easier to read later by keeping expect and reply separated.

- **eem_cli_write()**—Writes the command that is to be executed to the specified CLI channel handler. The CLI channel handler executes the command.
How to Configure the EEM Python Policy

For the Python script to work, you must enable the Guest Shell. For more information, see the Guest Shell chapter.

Registering a Python Policy

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. event manager directory user policy path
4. event manager policy policy-filename
5. exit
6. show event manager policy registered
7. show event manager history events

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> event manager directory user policy path</td>
<td>Specifies a directory to use for storing user library files or user-defined EEM policies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# event manager directory user policy flash:/user_library</td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> You must have a policy in the specified path. For example, in this step, the eem_script.py policy is available in the flash:/user_library folder or path.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> event manager policy policy-filename</td>
<td>Registers a policy with EEM.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# event manager policy eem_script.py</td>
<td>• The policy is parsed based on the file extension. If the file extension is .py, the policy is registered as Python policy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• EEM schedules and runs policies on the basis of an event specification that is contained within the policy itself. When the event manager policy command is invoked, EEM examines the policy and registers it to be run when the specified event occurs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Purpose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> exit</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> show event manager policy registered</td>
<td>Displays the registered EEM policies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> show event manager history events</td>
<td>Displays EEM events that have been triggered.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Example

The following is sample output from the `show event manager policy registered` command:

```
Device# show event manager policy registered

No. Class Type Event Type Trap Time Registered Name
1 script user multiple Off Tue Aug 2 22:12:15 2016 multi_1.py
   1: syslog: pattern {COUNTER}
   2: none: policymame {multi_1.py} sync {yes}
   trigger delay 10.000
   correlate event 1 or event 2
   attribute tag 1 occurs 1
   nice 0 queue-priority normal maxrun 100.000 scheduler rp_primary Secu none

2 script user multiple Off Tue Aug 2 22:12:20 2016 multi_2.py
   1: syslog: pattern {COUNTER}
   2: none: policymame {multi_2.py} sync {yes}
   trigger
   correlate event 1 or event 2
   nice 0 queue-priority normal maxrun 100.000 scheduler rp_primary Secu none

3 script user multiple Off Tue Aug 2 22:13:31 2016 multi.tcl
   1: syslog: pattern {COUNTER}
   2: none: policymame {multi.tcl} sync {yes}
   trigger
   correlate event 1 or event 2
   attribute tag 1 occurs 1
   nice 0 queue-priority normal maxrun 100.000 scheduler rp_primary Secu none
```

### Running Python Scripts as Part of EEM Applet Actions

**Python Script: eem_script.py**

An EEM applet can include a Python script with an action command. In this example, an user is trying to run a standard Python script as part of the EEM action, however; EEM Python package is
not available in the standard Python script. The standard Python script in IOS has a package named
from cli import cli,clip and this package can be used to execute IOS commands.

```
import sys
from cli import cli,clip,execute,executep,configure,configurep

intf= sys.argv[1:]
intf = ''.join(intf[0])

print ('This script is going to unshut interface %s and then print show ip interface
brief\%intf)

if intf == 'loopback55':
    configurep(['interface loopback55','no shutdown','end'])
else :
    cmd='int %s,no shut ,end' % intf
    configurep(cmd.split(','))

executep('show ip interface brief')
```

This following is sample output from the guestshell run python command.

```
Device# guestshell run python /flash/eem_script.py loop55
This script is going to unshut interface loop55 and then print show ip interface brief
Line 1 SUCCESS: int loop55
Line 2 SUCCESS: no shut
Line 3 SUCCESS: end
```

Programmability Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.x
Device#  
Jun 7 12:51:20.549: %LINEPROTO-5-UPDOWN: Line protocol on Interface Loopback55, changed state to up  
Jun 7 12:51:20.549: %LINK-3-UPDOWN: Interface Loopback55, changed state to up

The following is a sample script for printing messages to the syslog. This script must be stored in a file, copied to the file system on the device, and registered using the event manager policy file.

```python
::cisco::eem::event_register_syslog tag "1" pattern COUNTER maxrun 200
import eem
import time
eem.action_syslog("SAMPLE SYSLOG MESSAGE","6","TEST")
```

The following is sample script to print EEM environment variables. This script must be stored in a file, copied to the file system on the device, and registered using the event manager policy file.

```python
::cisco::eem::event_register_syslog tag "1" pattern COUNTER maxrun 200
import eem
import time
c = eem.env_reginfo()

print "EEM Environment Variables"
for k,v in c.iteritems():
    print "KEY : " + k + str(" ---> ") + v

print "Built in Variables"
for i,j in a.iteritems() :
    print "KEY : " + i + str(" ---> ") + j
```

Adding a Python Script in an EEM Applet

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable  
2. configure terminal  
3. event manager applet applet-name  
4. event [tag event-tag] syslog pattern regular-expression  
5. action label cli command cli-string  
6. action label cli command cli-string [ pattern pattern-string ]  
7. end  
8. show event manager policy active  
9. show event manager history events
# DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enable</td>
<td>- Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Step 2**        | Enters global configuration mode. |
| configure terminal| |
| **Example:**      | |
| Device# configure terminal | |

| **Step 3**        | Registers an applet with the Embedded Event Manager (EEM) and enters applet configuration mode. |
| event manager applet **applet-name** | |
| **Example:**      | |
| Device(config)# event manager applet interface_Shutdown | |

| **Step 4**        | Specifies a regular expression to perform the syslog message pattern match. |
| event **[tag **event-tag**] syslog pattern regular-expression** | |
| **Example:**      | |
| Device(config-applet)# event syslog pattern "Interface Loopback55, changed state to administratively down" | |

| **Step 5**        | Specifies the IOS command to be executed when an EEM applet is triggered. |
| action **label cli command cli-string** | |
| **Example:**      | |
| Device(config-applet)# action 0.0 cli command "en" | |

| **Step 6**        | Specifies the action to be specified with the **pattern** keyword. |
| action **label cli command cli-string [ pattern pattern-string ]** | |
| **Example:**      | |
| Device(config-applet)# action 1.0 cli command "guestshell run python3 /bootflash/eem_script.py loop55" | |

| **Step 7**        | Exits applet configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode. |
| end               | |
| **Example:**      | |
| Device(config-applet)# end | |

| **Step 8**        | Displays EEM policies that are executing. |
| show event manager policy active | |
| **Example:**      | |
| Device# show event manager policy active | |

| **Step 9**        | Displays the EEM events that have been triggered. |
| show event manager history events | |
| **Example:**      | |
| Device# show event manager history events | |
What to do next

The following example shows how to trigger the Python script configured in the task:

```
Device(config)# interface loopback 55
Device(config-if)# shutdown
Device(config-if)# end
Device#
```

```
Mar 13 10:53:22.358 EDT: %SYS-5-CONFIG_I: Configured from console by console
Mar 13 10:53:27.319 EDT: %LINK-3-UPDOWN: Interface Loopback55, changed state to administratively down
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
Mar 13 10:53:35.38 EDT: %LINEPROTO-5-UPDOWN: Line protocol on Interface Loopback55, changed state to up
```

```
+++ 10:54:33 edi37(default) exec +++
```

```
show ip interface br
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>IP-Address</th>
<th>OK? Method Status</th>
<th>Protocol</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0/0/0</td>
<td>unassigned</td>
<td>YES unset down</td>
<td>down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0/0/1</td>
<td>unassigned</td>
<td>YES unset down</td>
<td>down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0/0/2</td>
<td>10.1.1.31</td>
<td>YES DHCP up</td>
<td>up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0/0/3</td>
<td>unassigned</td>
<td>YES unset down</td>
<td>down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GigabitEthernet0</td>
<td>192.0.2.1</td>
<td>YES manual up</td>
<td>up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loopback55</td>
<td>198.51.100.1</td>
<td>YES manual up</td>
<td>up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loopback66</td>
<td>172.16.0.1</td>
<td>YES manual up</td>
<td>up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loopback77</td>
<td>192.168.0.1</td>
<td>YES manual up</td>
<td>up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loopback88</td>
<td>203.0.113.1</td>
<td>YES manual up</td>
<td>up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Additional References EEM Python Module**

**Related Documents**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS commands</td>
<td>Cisco IOS Master Command List, All Releases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EEM configuration</td>
<td>Embedded Event Manager Configuration Guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EEM commands</td>
<td>Embedded Event Manager Command Reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guest Shell configuration</td>
<td>Guest Shell</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/support">http://www.cisco.com/support</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature Information for EEM Python Module

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.
### Table 12: Feature Information for EEM Python Module

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| EEM Python Module          | Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a | This feature supports Python scripts as EEM policies. No new commands were introduced. In Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a, this feature was implemented on the following platforms:  
  - Cisco Catalyst 3650 Series Switches  
  - Cisco Catalyst 3850 Series Switches  
  - Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches  

In Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1b, this feature was implemented on the following platforms:  
  - Cisco ISR 4000 Series Integrated Service Routers                                                                                     |
|                            | Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1b | In Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.6.2, this feature was implemented on Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switches.                                                   |
|                            | Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a   | In Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a, this feature was implemented on Cisco Catalyst 9500-High Performance Series Switches                                  |
PART III

Model-Driven Programmability

• NETCONF Protocol, on page 91
• RESTCONF Protocol, on page 107
• gNMI Protocol, on page 121
• Model Based AAA, on page 137
• Model-Driven Telemetry, on page 145
• In-Service Model Update, on page 155
Restrictions for the NETCONF Protocol

The NETCONF feature is not supported on a device running dual IOSd configuration or software redundancy.

Information About the NETCONF Protocol

Introduction to Data Models - Programmatic and Standards-Based Configuration

The traditional way of managing network devices is by using Command Line Interfaces (CLIs) for configurational (configuration commands) and operational data (show commands). For network management, Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is widely used, especially for exchanging management information between various network devices. Although CLIs and SNMP are heavily used, they have several restrictions. CLIs are highly proprietary, and human intervention is required to understand and interpret their text-based specification. SNMP does not distinguish between configurational and operational data.

The solution lies in adopting a programmatic and standards-based way of writing configurations to any network device, replacing the process of manual configuration. Network devices running on Cisco IOS XE support the automation of configuration for multiple devices across the network using data models. Data models are developed in a standard, industry-defined language, that can define configuration and state information of a network.

Cisco IOS XE supports the Yet Another Next Generation (YANG) data modeling language. YANG can be used with the Network Configuration Protocol (NETCONF) to provide the desired solution of automated and programmable network operations. NETCONF (RFC 6241) is an XML-based protocol that client applications...
use to request information from and make configuration changes to the device. YANG is primarily used to model the configuration and state data used by NETCONF operations.

In Cisco IOS XE, model-based interfaces interoperate with existing device CLI, Syslog, and SNMP interfaces. These interfaces are optionally exposed northbound from network devices. YANG is used to model each protocol based on RFC 6020.

---

### Note

To access Cisco YANG models in a developer-friendly way, clone the GitHub repository, and navigate to the vendor/cisco subdirectory. Models for various releases of IOS-XE, IOS-XR, and NX-OS platforms are available here.

---

### NETCONF

NETCONF provides a mechanism to install, manipulate, and delete the configuration of network devices. It uses an Extensible Markup Language (XML)-based data encoding for the configuration data as well as the protocol messages.

NETCONF uses a simple Remote Procedure Call (RPC) based mechanism to facilitate communication between a client and a server. The client can be a script or application running as part of a network manager. The server is typically a network device (switch or router). It uses Secure Shell (SSH) as the transport layer across network devices. It uses SSH port number 830 as the default port. The port number is a configurable option.

NETCONF also supports capability discovery and model downloads. Supported models are discovered using the ietf-netconf-monitoring model. Revision dates for each model are shown in the capabilities response. Data models are available for optional download from a device using the get-schema RPC. You can use these YANG models to understand or export the data model. For more details on NETCONF, see RFC 6241.

In releases prior to Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1, an operational data manager (based on polling) was enabled separately. In Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1 and later releases, operational data works on platforms running NETCONF (similar to how configuration data works), and is enabled by default. For more information on the components that are enabled for operational data queries or streaming, see the GitHub repository, to view *-oper in the naming convention.

### NETCONF RESTCONF IPv6 Support

Data model interfaces (DMIs) support the use of IPv6 protocol. DMI IPv6 support helps client applications to communicate with services that use IPv6 addresses. External facing interfaces will provide dual-stack support; both IPv4 and IPv6.

DMIs are a set of services that facilitate the management of network elements. Application layer protocols such as, NETCONF and RESTCONF access these DMIs over a network.

If IPv6 addresses are not configured, external-facing applications will continue to listen on IPv6 sockets; but these sockets will be unreachable.

### NETCONF Global Session Lock

The NETCONF protocol provides a set of operations to manage device configurations and retrieve device state information. NETCONF supports a global lock, and the ability to kill non-responsive sessions are introduced in NETCONF.
To ensure consistency and prevent conflicting configurations through multiple simultaneous sessions, the owner of the session can lock the NETCONF session. The NETCONF lock RPC locks the configuration parser and the running configuration database. All other NETCONF sessions (that do not own the lock) cannot perform edit operations; but can perform read operations. These locks are intended to be short-lived and allow the owner to make changes without interaction with other NETCONF clients, non-NETCONF clients (such as, SNMP and CLI scripts), and human users.

A global lock held by an active session is revoked when the associated session is killed. The lock gives the session holding the lock exclusive write access to the configuration. When a configuration change is denied due to a global lock, the error message will specify that a NETCONF global lock is the reason the configuration change has been denied.

The <lock> operation takes a mandatory parameter, <target> that is the name of the configuration datastore that is to be locked. When a lock is active, the <edit-config> and <copy-config> operations are not allowed.

If the clear configuration lock command is specified while a NETCONF global lock is being held, a full synchronization of the configuration is scheduled and a warning syslog message is produced. This command clears only the parser configuration lock.

The following is a sample RPC that shows the <lock> operation:

```
<rpc message-id="101"
     xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
  <lock>
    <target>
      <running/>
    </target>
  </lock>
</rpc>
```

### NETCONF Kill Session

During a session conflict or client misuse of the global lock, NETCONF sessions can be monitored via the show netconf-yang sessions command, and non-responsive sessions can be cleared using the clear netconf-yang session command. The clear netconf-yang session command clears both the NETCONF lock and the configuration lock.

A <kill-session> request will force a NETCONF session to terminate. When a NETCONF entity receives a <kill-session> request for an open session, it stops all operations in process, releases all locks and resources associated with the session, and closes any associated connections.

A <kill-session> request requires the session-ID of the NETCONF session that is to be terminated. If the value of the session-ID is equal to the current session ID, an invalid-value error is returned. If a NETCONF session is terminated while its transaction is still in progress, the data model infrastructure will request a rollback, apply it to the network element, and trigger a synchronization of all YANG models.

If a session kill fails, and a global lock is held, enter the clear configuration lock command via the console or vty. At this point, the data models can be stopped and restarted.

### Candidate Config Support

The Candidate Config Support feature enables support for candidate capability by implementing RFC 6241 with a simple commit option.
Candidate datastore provides a temporary work space in which a copy of the device's running configuration is stored. You can create and modify the running configuration before committing the running configuration to the device. Candidate capability is indicated by the following NETCONF capability:
urn:ietf:params:netconf:capability:candidate:1.0. This NETCONF capability indicates that the device supports Candidate Datastore. This is a shared data store which enables the user to create, add, delete and make changes to the device configuration without effecting the running configuration on the device. A commit operation pushes the configuration from “candidate” to the “running” configuration on the device. When “candidate” data store is enabled, the Running data store is NOT writable through NETCONF sessions, all configurations get committed ONLY through Candidate. In other words, the writable-running NETCONF capability is not enabled with Candidate.

Note
It must be kept in mind that candidate datastore is a shared data store. Multiple NETCONF sessions can modify it contents simultaneously. Therefore, it is important to lock the datastore before modifying its contents, to prevent conflicting commits which can eventually lead to losing any configuration changes.

NETCONF Operations on Candidate
The following operations can be performed on Candidate data store.

Note
The information in this section has been referenced from section 8.3.4 of RFC6241. Please refer to the RFC for for more details and the exact RPCs.

Lock
A <lock> RPC is used to “Lock” the target data store. This prevents others users from modifying the configuration in the “locked” data store. We can lock both candidate and running data through the lock operation.

Note
“Locking” candidate datastore does not affect Cisco IOS config lock or running config lock and vice versa.

Commit
A <commit> RPC, copies the candidate configuration to the device’s running configuration. A commit operation must be performed after you have updated the candidate configuration to push the configuration to the device.

If either “Running” or “Candidate” datastore is locked by another NETCONF session, the commit RPC will fail with an RPC Error Reply. The <error-tag> should be <in-use> and <error-info> should have the “session-id” of the NETCONF session holding the lock. You can also lock the “running” config by using the “Global” lock by entering the “conf t lock” mode, but, the commit operation will fail with an RPC Error Reply, with error-tag value <in-use> and the session-id will be “0”.

Edit-config
Candidate configuration can be used as a target for “edit-config” operation to modify a configuration. This provides you the ability to stage configuration changes in candidate without affecting the running configuration on the device.
Discard
To remove the changes made to candidate configuration, perform a discard operation to revert the candidate configuration to running configuration.

If the contents of candidate datastore have already been modified by NETCONF session A, and session B tries to lock the Candidate, the lock will fail. NETCONF session B must perform a <discard> operation to remove any outstanding configurations on candidate from other NETCONF sessions before locking a candidate.

Unlock
After working on candidate configuration, such as, lock, edit-config, or commit operations, you can “unlock” the data store, by specifying “candidate” as target in the Unlock RPC. Candidate is now available for all operations in other sessions.

If failure occurs with outstanding changes to candidate datastore, it can be challenging to recover the configuration and creates problems for other sessions. To avoid any issues, outstanding changes are discarded in candidate when the lock is released—either implicitly on “NETCONF session failure” or explicitly on “Unlock” operation.

Get-config, Copy-config, Validate
Candidate can be used as a source or target for any of the get-config, copy-config or validate config operations. If you do not want to commit changes in candidate to the device but only to validate the configuration, you can do so by <validate> RPC followed by a “discard”.

How to use Candidate?
The following diagram explains the recommended best practice when modifying the device configuration through candidate datastore:

**Figure 4: Modifying Candidate Datastore Steps**

1. Lock running datastore.
2. Lock candidate datastore.
3. Make modifications to candidate configuration through edit-config RPCs with target candidate.
4. Commit candidate configuration to running.
5. Unlock candidate and running.

Candidate Support Configuration
The candidate datastore functionality can be enabled by using the netconf-yang feature candidate-datastore command. When the datastore state changes from “running” to “candidate” or back, a warning message will
be displayed notifying the user that a restart of netconf-yang or restconf will occur in order for the change to
take effect. When candidate is enabled, The running data store is not writable through Netconf sessions, all
configurations get committed only through candidate. In other words, the writable-running Netconf capability
is not enabled with candidate.

If the selection of candidate or running datastore, is specified in the configuration when a netconf-yang or
restconf confd process starts, a warning appears as shown below.

Device(config)# netconf-yang feature candidate-datastore
netconf-yang initialization in progress - datastore transition not allowed, please try again
after 30 seconds

If the selection of candidate or running is made after netconf-yang or restconf confd process starts, the following
apply:

• If the netconf-yang feature candidate-datastore command is configured, the command enables the
“candidate” datastore and prints the following warning:
netconf-yang and/or restconf is transitioning from running to candidate netconf-yang
and/or restconf will now be restarted,
and any sessions in progress will be terminated“.

• If the netconf-yang feature candidate-datastore command is removed, the command disables the
“candidate” datastore, enables the “running” datastore and prints the following warning:
netconf-yang and/or restconf is transitioning from candidate to running netconf-yang
and/or restconf will now be restarted,
and any sessions in progress will be terminated“.

• When netconf-yang or restconf are restarted, sessions in progress will be lost.

---

Note
Candidate data store is a shared data store, that is, multiple Netconf sessions can modify the contents
simultaneously. Therefore, it is important for a user to lock the data store before modifying its contents, to
prevent conflicting commits which can eventually lead to losing any configuration changes; wherein another
user overwrites the configuration by modifying the configuration and issuing a commit.

---

How to Configure the NETCONF Protocol

NETCONF-YANG uses the primary trustpoint of a device. If a trustpoint does not exist, when
NETCONF-YANG is configured, it creates a self-signed trustpoint. For more information, see the Public Key

Providing Privilege Access to Use NETCONF

To start working with NETCONF APIs, you must be a user with privilege level 15. To provide this, perform
the following task:

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. username name privilege level password password
4. `aaa authentication login default local` and `aaa authorization exec default local`
5. `end`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enable</code></td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device# enable</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>Establishes a user name-based authentication system. Configure the following keywords:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>username name privilege level password password</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device(config)# username example-name privilege 15 password example_password</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>[Optional] If <code>aaa new-model</code> is configured, AAA authentication and authorization is required. For a remote AAA server, replace <code>local</code> with your AAA server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>aaa authentication login default local</code> and <code>aaa authorization exec default local</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device (config)# aaa authentication login default local</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device (config)# aaa authorization exec default local</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>end</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Device (config)# end</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Configuring NETCONF-YANG**

If the legacy NETCONF protocol is enabled on your device, the RFC-compliant NETCONF protocol does not work. Disable the legacy NETCONF protocol by using the `no netconf legacy` command.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `netconf-yang`
4. `netconf-yang feature candidate-datastore`
5. `exit`
### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Step 1 | enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
- Enter your password if prompted. |
| Example: | Device> enable |
| Step 2 | configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode. |
| Example: | Device# configure terminal |
| Step 3 | netconf-yang | Enables the NETCONF interface on your network device.  
**Note** After the initial enablement through the CLI, network devices can be managed subsequently through a model based interface. The complete activation of model-based interface processes may require up to 90 seconds. |
| Example: | Device (config)# netconf-yang |
| Step 4 | netconf-yang feature candidate-datastore | Enables candidate datastore. |
| Example: | Device(config)# netconf-yang feature candidate-datastore |
| Step 5 | exit | Exits global configuration mode. |
| Example: | Device (config)# exit |

### Configuring NETCONF Options

#### Configuring SNMP

Enable the SNMP Server in IOS to enable NETCONF to access SNMP MIB data using YANG models generated from supported MIBs, and to enable supported SNMP traps in IOS to receive NETCONF notifications from the supported traps.

Perform the following steps:

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. Enable SNMP features in IOS.
2. After NETCONF-YANG starts, enable SNMP Trap support by sending the following RPC `<edit-config>` message to the NETCONF-YANG port.
3. Send the following RPC message to the NETCONF-YANG port to save the running configuration to the startup configuration.
DETAILED STEPS

Step 1  Enable SNMP features in IOS.

Example:

```
configure terminal
logging history debugging
logging snmp-trap emergencies
logging snmp-trap alerts
logging snmp-trap critical
logging snmp-trap errors
logging snmp-trap warnings
logging snmp-trap notifications
logging snmp-trap informational
logging snmp-trap debugging
!
snmp-server community public RW
snmp-server trap link ietf
snmp-server enable traps snmp authentication linkdown linkup
snmp-server enable traps syslog
snmp-server manager
exit
```

Step 2  After NETCONF-YANG starts, enable SNMP Trap support by sending the following RPC <edit-config> message to the NETCONF-YANG port.

Example:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<rpc xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0" message-id="">
  <edit-config>
    <target>
      <running/>
    </target>
    <config>
      <netconf-yang xmlns="http://cisco.com/yang/cisco-self-mgmt">
        <cisco-ia xmlns="http://cisco.com/yang/cisco-ia">
          <snmp-trap-control>
            <trap-list>
              <trap-oid>1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.41.2.0.1</trap-oid>
            </trap-list>
            <trap-list>
              <trap-oid>1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.3</trap-oid>
            </trap-list>
            <trap-list>
              <trap-oid>1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.4</trap-oid>
            </trap-list>
          </snmp-trap-control>
        </cisco-ia>
      </netconf-yang>
    </config>
  </edit-config>
</rpc>
```

Step 3  Send the following RPC message to the NETCONF-YANG port to save the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<rpc xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0" message-id="">
  <edit-config>
    <target>
      <running/>
    </target>
    <config>
      <netconf-yang xmlns="http://cisco.com/yang/cisco-self-mgmt">
        <cisco-ia xmlns="http://cisco.com/yang/cisco-ia">
          <snmp-trap-control>
            <trap-list>
              <trap-oid>1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.41.2.0.1</trap-oid>
            </trap-list>
            <trap-list>
              <trap-oid>1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.3</trap-oid>
            </trap-list>
            <trap-list>
              <trap-oid>1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.4</trap-oid>
            </trap-list>
          </snmp-trap-control>
        </cisco-ia>
      </netconf-yang>
    </config>
  </edit-config>
</rpc>
```
Verifying the NETCONF Protocol Configuration

Use the following commands to verify your NETCONF configuration.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. `show netconf-yang datastores`
2. `show netconf-yang sessions`
3. `show netconf-yang sessions detail`
4. `show netconf-yang statistics`
5. `show platform software yang-management process`

DETAILED STEPS

Step 1  `show netconf-yang datastores`

Displays information about NETCONF-YANG datastores.

Example:

```
Device# show netconf-yang datastores
```

```
Device# show netconf-yang datastores
Datastore Name : running
Globally Locked By Session : 42
Globally Locked Time : 2018-01-15T14:25:14-05:00
```

Step 2  `show netconf-yang sessions`

Displays information about NETCONF-YANG sessions.

Example:

```
Device# show netconf-yang sessions
```

```
R: Global-lock on running datastore
C: Global-lock on candidate datastore
S: Global-lock on startup datastore
Number of sessions : 10
session-id transport username source-host global-lock
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------
40 netconf-ssh admin 10.85.70.224 None
42 netconf-ssh admin 10.85.70.224 None
44 netconf-ssh admin 10.85.70.224 None
46 netconf-ssha admin 10.85.70.224 None
48 netconf-ssha admin 10.85.70.224 None
50 netconf-ssha admin 10.85.70.224 None
52 netconf-ssha admin 10.85.70.224 None
54 netconf-ssha admin 10.85.70.224 None
56 netconf-ssha admin 10.85.70.224 None
```

Step 3  **show netconf-yang sessions detail**

Displays detailed information about NETCONF-YANG sessions.

**Example:**

```bash
Device# show netconf-yang sessions detail

R: Global-lock on running datastore
C: Global-lock on candidate datastore
S: Global-lock on startup datastore

Number of sessions : 1

  session-id : 19
  transport   : netconf-ssh
  username    : admin
  source-host : 2001:db8::1
  login-time  : 2018-10-26T12:37:22+00:00
  in-rpcs     : 0
  in-bad-rpcs : 0
  out-rpc-errors : 0
  out-notifications : 0
  global-lock : None
```

Step 4  **show netconf-yang statistics**

Displays information about NETCONF-YANG statistics.

**Example:**

```bash
Device# show netconf-yang statistics

netconf-start-time : 2018-01-15T12:51:14-05:00
  in-rpcs : 0
  in-bad-rpcs : 0
  out-rpc-errors : 0
  out-notifications : 0
  in-sessions : 10
  dropped-sessions : 0
  in-bad-hellos : 0
```

Step 5  **show platform software yang-management process**

Displays the status of the software processes required to support NETCONF-YANG.

**Example:**

```bash
Device# show platform software yang-management process

  confd : Running
  nesd : Running
  syncfd : Running
  ncsshd : Running
  dmlauthd : Running
  vtyserverutilsd : Running
  opdatamgrd : Running
  nginx : Running
  ndbmand : Running
```
Note: The process `nginx` runs if `ip http secure-server` or `ip http server` is configured on the device. This process is not required to be in the `running` state for NETCONF to function properly. However, the `nginx` process is required for RESTCONF.

Table 13: show platform software yang-management process Field Descriptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>confd</td>
<td>Configuration daemon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nesd</td>
<td>Network element synchronizer daemon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>syncfd</td>
<td>Sync from daemon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ncsshdd</td>
<td>NETCONF Secure Shell (SSH) daemon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dmiauthd</td>
<td>Device management interface (DMI) authentication daemon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vtyserverutild</td>
<td>VTY server util daemon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opdatamgrd</td>
<td>Operational Data Manager daemon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nginx</td>
<td>NGINX web server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ndbmand</td>
<td>NETCONF database manager</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Additional References for NETCONF Protocol

Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>YANG data models for various release of IOS-XE, IOS-XR, and NX-OS platforms</td>
<td>To access Cisco YANG models in a developer-friendly way, please clone the GitHub repository, and navigate to the <code>vendor/cisco</code> subdirectory. Models for various releases of IOS-XE, IOS-XR, and NX-OS platforms are available here.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Standards and RFCs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard/RFC</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RFC 6020</td>
<td>YANG - A Data Modeling Language for the Network Configuration Protocol (NETCONF)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFC 6241</td>
<td>Network Configuration Protocol (NETCONF)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFC 6536</td>
<td>Network Configuration Protocol (NETCONF) Access Control Model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFC 8040</td>
<td>RESTCONF Protocol</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources,</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/support">http://www.cisco.com/support</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>technical issues with Cisco products and technologies.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To receive security and technical information about your products,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature Information for NETCONF Protocol

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.
Table 14: Feature Information for NETCONF Protocol

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Candidate Config Support| Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.1 | The Candidate Config Support feature enables support for candidate capability by implementing RFC 6241 with a simple commit option. This feature was implemented on the following platforms:  
  - Cisco ASR 1000 Series Aggregated Services Routers  
  - Cisco ASR 900 Series Aggregated Services Routers  
  - Cisco Catalyst 3650 Series Switches  
  - Cisco Catalyst 3850 Series Switches  
  - Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches  
  - Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switches  
  - Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches  
  - Cisco CBR-8 Series Routers  
  - Cisco Cloud Services Router 1000V Series  
  - Cisco ISR 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers  

The following command was introduced: `netconf-yang feature candidate-datastore`. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NETCONF Network Management Interface</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Denali 16.3.1</td>
<td>The NETCONF Protocol feature facilitates a programmatic and standards-based way of writing configurations and reading operational data from network devices. The following command was introduced: <code>netconf-yang</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a</td>
<td>This feature was implemented on Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches and Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.6.2</td>
<td>This feature was implemented on Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switches.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.7.1</td>
<td>This feature was implemented on the following platforms:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco ASR 900 Series Aggregated Services Routers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco ASR 920 Series Aggregated Services Routers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Network Convergence System 4200 Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
<td>This feature was implemented on Cisco Catalyst 9500-High Performance Series Switches.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.2</td>
<td>This feature was implemented on Cisco Catalyst 9200 Series Switches.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature Name</td>
<td>Release</td>
<td>Feature Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| NETCONF and RESTCONF IPv6 Support                | Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a | This feature was implemented on the following platforms:  
  - Cisco ASR 1000 Series Aggregated Services Routers  
  - Cisco ASR 900 Series Aggregated Services Routers  
  - Cisco Catalyst 3650 Series Switches  
  - Cisco Catalyst 3850 Series Switches  
  - Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches  
  - Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switches  
  - Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches  
  - Cisco CBR-8 Series Routers  
  - Cisco CSR 1000v Switches  
  - Cisco IR1101 Integrated Services Router Rugged  
  - Cisco ISR 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers |
| NETCONF Global Lock and Kill Session             | Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a | This feature was implemented on the following platforms:  
  - Cisco ASR 1000 Series Aggregated Services Routers  
  - Cisco ASR 900 Series Aggregated Services Routers  
  - Cisco Catalyst 3650 Series Switches  
  - Cisco Catalyst 3850 Series Switches  
  - Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches  
  - Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switches  
  - Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches  
  - Cisco CBR-8 Series Routers  
  - Cisco CSR 1000v Switches  
  - Cisco ISR 1100 Series Integrated Services Routers  
  - Cisco ISR 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers |
CHAPTER 9

RESTCONF Protocol

This chapter describes how to configure the HTTP-based Representational State Transfer Configuration Protocol (RESTCONF). RESTCONF provides a programmatic interface based on standard mechanisms for accessing configuration data, state data, data-model-specific Remote Procedure Call (RPC) operations and events, defined in the YANG model.

- Prerequisites for the RESTCONF Protocol, on page 107
- Restrictions for the RESTCONF Protocol, on page 107
- Information About RESTCONF Programmable Interface, on page 108
- How to Configure RESTCONF Programmable Interface, on page 110
- Configuration Examples for RESTCONF Programmable Interface, on page 115
- Additional References for the RESTCONF Protocol, on page 118
- Feature Information for the RESTCONF Protocol, on page 119

Prerequisites for the RESTCONF Protocol

- Enable the Cisco IOS-HTTP services for RESTCONF. For more information, see Examples for RESTCONF RPCs

Restrictions for the RESTCONF Protocol

The following restrictions apply to the RESTCONF protocol:

- Notifications and event streams
- YANG patch
- Optional query parameters, such as, filter, start-time, stop-time, replay, and action
- The RESTCONF feature is not supported on a device running dual IOSd configuration or software redundancy.
Information About RESTCONF Programmable Interface

Overview of RESTCONF

This section describes the protocols and modelling languages that enable a programmatic way of writing configurations to a network device.

- RESTCONF—Uses structured data (XML or JSON) and YANG to provide a REST-like APIs, enabling you to programmatically access different network devices. RESTCONF APIs use HTTPs methods.

- YANG—A data modelling language that is used to model configuration and operational features. YANG determines the scope and the kind of functions that can be performed by NETCONF and RESTCONF APIs.

In releases prior to Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1, an operational data manager (based on polling) was enabled separately. In Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1 and later releases, operational data works on platforms running NETCONF (similar to how configuration data works), and is enabled by default. For more information on the components that are enabled for operational data queries or streaming, see the GitHub repository, and view *-oper in the naming convention.

HTTPs Methods

The HTTPS-based RESTCONF protocol (RFC 8040), is a stateless protocol that uses secure HTTP methods to provide CREATE, READ, UPDATE, and DELETE (CRUD) operations on a conceptual datastore containing YANG-defined data, which is compatible with a server that implements NETCONF datastores.

The following table shows how the RESTCONF operations relate to NETCONF protocol operations:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OPTIONS</th>
<th>SUPPORTED METHODS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GET</td>
<td>Read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PATCH</td>
<td>Update</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PUT</td>
<td>Create or Replace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POST</td>
<td>Create or Operations (reload, default)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DELETE</td>
<td>Deletes the targeted resource</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEAD</td>
<td>Header metadata (no response body)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RESTCONF Root Resource

- A RESTCONF device determines the root of the RESTCONF API through the link element: 
  /well-known/host-meta resource that contains the RESTCONF attribute.

- A RESTCONF device uses the RESTCONF API root resource as the initial part of the path in the request URI.
Example:

Example returning /restconf:

The client might send the following:

```
GET /.well-known/host-meta HTTP/1.1
Host: example.com
Accept: application/xrd+xml
```

The server might respond as follows:

```
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Content-Type: application/xrd+xml
Content-Length: nnn

<XRD xmlns='http://docs.oasis-open.org/ns/xri/xrd-1.0'>
  <Link rel='restconf' href='/restconf'/>
</XRD>
```

Example of URIs:

- GigabitEthernet0/0/2 -
  https://10.104.50.97/restconf/data/Cisco-IOS-XE-native:native/interface/GigabitEthernet=0%2F0%2F2

- fields=name -
  https://10.104.50.97/restconf/data/Cisco-IOS-XE-native:native/interface/GigabitEthernet=0%2F0%2F2?fields=name

- depth=1 -

- Name and IP -

- MTU (fields) -

- MTU -

- Port-Channel -
  https://10.85.116.59/restconf/data/Cisco-IOS-XE-native:native/interface/Port-channel

- “Char” to “Hex” conversion chart: http://www.columbia.edu/kermit/ascii.html

**RESTCONF API Resource**

The API resource is the top-level resource located at +restconf. It supports the following media types:

- **Media** is the type of YANG formatted RPC that is sent to the RESCONF server (XML or JSON).

  - Application/YANG-Data+XML OR Application/YANG-Data+JSON

  - The API resource contains the RESTCONF root resource for the RESTCONF DATASTORE and OPERATION resources. For example:
The client may then retrieve the top-level API resource, using the root resource "/restconf".

```
GET /restconf HTTP/1.1
Host: example.com
Accept: application/yang-data+json
```

The server might respond as follows:

```
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Date: Thu, 26 Jan 2017 20:56:30 GMT
Server: example-server
Content-Type: application/yang-data+json

{
   "ietf-restconf:restconf" : {
      "data" : {},
      "operations" : {},
      "yang-library-version" : "2016-06-21"
   }
}
```

For more information, refer to RFC 3986

## Methods

Methods are HTTPS operations (GET/PATCH/POST/DELETE/OPTIONS/PUT) performed on a target resource. A YANG-formated RPC invokes a particular method on a given resource that pertains to a target YANG model residing in the RESTCONF server. The uniform resource identifier (URI) acts as a location identification for a given resource, so that the client RESTCONF method can locate that particular resource to take an action specified by an HTTPS method or property.

For more information, see RFC 8040 - RESTCONF Protocol

## How to Configure RESTCONF Programmable Interface

### Authentication of NETCONF/RESTCONF Using AAA

**Before you begin**

NETCONF and RESTCONF connections must be authenticated using authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA). As a result, RADIUS or TACACS+ users defined with privilege level 15 access are allowed access into the system.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. aaa new-model
4. aaa group server radius server-name
5. server-private ip-address key key-name
6. ip vrf forwarding vrf-name
### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong>&lt;br&gt;enable&lt;br&gt;Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode&lt;br&gt;• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong>&lt;br&gt;configure terminal&lt;br&gt;Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong>&lt;br&gt;aaa new-model&lt;br&gt;Example: Device(config)# aaa new-model</td>
<td>Enables AAA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong>&lt;br&gt;aaa group server radius server-name&lt;br&gt;Example: Device(config)# aaa group server radius ISE</td>
<td>Adds the RADIUS server and enters server group RADIUS configuration mode.&lt;br&gt;• The <em>server-name</em> argument specifies the RADIUS server group name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong>&lt;br&gt;server-private ip-address key key-name&lt;br&gt;Example: Device(config-sg-radius)# server-private 172.25.73.76 key Cisco123</td>
<td>Configures a IP address and encryption key for a private RADIUS server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong>&lt;br&gt;ip vrf forwarding vrf-name&lt;br&gt;Example: Device(config-sg-radius)# ip vrf forwarding Mgmt-intf</td>
<td>Configures the virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) reference of a AAA RADIUS or TACACS+ server group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong>&lt;br&gt;exit&lt;br&gt;Example: Device(config-sg-radius)# exit</td>
<td>Exits server group RADIUS configuration mode and returns to global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong>&lt;br&gt;aaa authentication login default group group-name local&lt;br&gt;Example:</td>
<td>Sets the specified group name as the default local AAA authentication during login.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# aaa authentication login default group ISE local</td>
<td>Specifies that no authentication is required while logging into a system.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 9**  
**aaa authentication login list-name none**  
**Example:**  
Device(config)# aaa authentication login NOAUTH none

**Step 10**  
**aaa authorization exec default group group-name local**  
**Example:**  
Device(config)# aaa authorization exec default group ISE local

**Step 11**  
**aaa session-id common**  
**Example:**  
Device(config)# aaa session-id common

**Step 12**  
**line console number**  
**Example:**  
Device(config)# line console 0

**Step 13**  
**login authentication authentication-list**  
**Example:**  
Device(config-line)# login authentication NOAUTH

**Step 14**  
**end**  
**Example:**  
Device(config-line)# end

### Enabling Cisco IOS HTTP Services for RESTCONF

Perform this task to use the RESTCONF interface.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable  
2. configure terminal  
3. restconf  
4. ip http secure-server  
5. end

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Device&gt; enable</strong></td>
<td>- Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Step 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>configure terminal</th>
<th>Enters global configuration mode.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Step 3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>restconf</th>
<th>Enables the RESTCONF interface on your network device.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# restconf</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Step 4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ip http secure-server</th>
<th>Enables a secure HTTP (HTTPS) server.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# ip http secure-server</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Step 5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>end</th>
<th>Exits global configuration mode and enters privileged EXEC mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

## Verifying RESTCONF Configuration

When a device boots up with the startup configuration, the `nginx` process will be running. However, DMI processes are not enabled.

The following sample output from the `show platform software yang-management process monitor` command shows that the `nginx` process is running:

```
Device# show platform software yang-management process monitor

COMMAND PID S VSZ RSS %CPU %MEM ELAPSED
nginx 27026 S 32356 18428 0.0 0.4 01:34
nginx 27032 S 337852 13600 0.0 0.3 01:34
```

NGINX is an internal webserver that acts as a proxy webserver. It provides Transport Layer Security (TLS)-based HTTPS. RESTCONF request sent via HTTPS is first received by the NGINX proxy web server, and the request is transferred to the `confd` web server for further syntax/semantics check.

The following sample output from the `show platform software yang-management process` command shows the status of the all processes when a device is booted with the startup-configuration:

```
Device# show platform software yang-management process

confd : Not Running
nssd : Not Running
syncfd : Not Running
ncsshd : Not Running
dmiauthd : Not Running
nginx : Running
ndbmand : Not Running
```
The nginx process gets restarted and DMI process are started, when the `restconf` command is configured.

The following sample output from the `show platform software yang-management process` command shows that the nginx process and DMI processes are up and running:

```
Device# show platform software yang-management process
confd       : Running
nesd        : Running
syncfd      : Running
ncsshd      : Not Running ! NETCONF-YANG is not configured, hence ncsshd process is in not running.
dmi authd   : Running
vtyserverutild : Running
opdatamgrd  : Running
nginx       : Running ! nginx process is up due to the HTTP configuration, and it is restarted when RESTCONF is enabled.
ndbmand     : Running
```

The following sample output from the `show platform software yang-management process monitor` command displays detailed information about all processes:

```
Device# show platform software yang-management process monitor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COMMAND</th>
<th>PID</th>
<th>VSZ</th>
<th>RSS</th>
<th>%CPU</th>
<th>%MEM</th>
<th>ELAPSED</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>confd</td>
<td>28728</td>
<td>860396</td>
<td>168496</td>
<td>42.2</td>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>00:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>confd-startup.s</td>
<td>28448</td>
<td>19664</td>
<td>4496</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>00:12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dmi authd</td>
<td>29499</td>
<td>275356</td>
<td>23340</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>00:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ndbmand</td>
<td>29321</td>
<td>567232</td>
<td>65564</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>00:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nesd</td>
<td>29029</td>
<td>189952</td>
<td>14224</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>00:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nginx</td>
<td>29711</td>
<td>332288</td>
<td>18420</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>00:09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nginx</td>
<td>29717</td>
<td>337636</td>
<td>12216</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>00:09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pubd</td>
<td>28237</td>
<td>631848</td>
<td>68624</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>00:13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>syncfd</td>
<td>28776</td>
<td>189656</td>
<td>16744</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>00:12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

After AAA and the RESTCONF interface is configured, and nginx process and relevant DMI processes are running; the device is ready to receive RESTCONF requests.

Use the `show netconf-yang sessions` command to view the status of NETCONF/RESTCONF sessions:

```
Device# show netconf-yang sessions
R: Global-lock on running datastore
C: Global-lock on candidate datastore
S: Global-lock on startup datastore

Number of sessions : 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>session-id</th>
<th>transport</th>
<th>username</th>
<th>source-host</th>
<th>global-lock</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>netconf-ssh</td>
<td>admin</td>
<td>2001:db8::1</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

Use the `show netconf-yang sessions detail` command to view detailed information about NETCONF/RESTCONF sessions:

```
Device# show netconf-yang sessions detail
```
R: Global-lock on running datastore
C: Global-lock on candidate datastore
S: Global-lock on startup datastore

Number of sessions : 1

session-id : 19
transport : netconf-ssh
username : admin
source-host : 2001:db8::1
login-time : 2018-10-26T12:37:22+00:00
in-rpcs : 0
in-bad-rpcs : 0
out-rpc-errors : 0
out-notifications : 0
global-lock : None

Configuration Examples for RESTCONF Programmable Interface

Example: Configuring the RESTCONF Protocol

RESTCONF Requests (HTTPS Verbs):
The following is a sample RESTCONF request that shows the HTTPS verbs allowed on a targeted resource.
In this example, the logging monitor command is used.

```bash
root:~# curl -i -k -X "OPTIONS"
\ 
> -H 'Accept: application/yang-data+json' \\ > -u 'admin:admin'
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Server: nginx
Date: Mon, 23 Apr 2018 15:27:57 GMT
Content-Type: text/html
Content-Length: 0
Connection: keep-alive
Allow: DELETE, GET, HEAD, PATCH, POST, PUT, OPTIONS  >>>>>>>> Allowed methods
Cache-Control: private, no-cache, must-revalidate, proxy-revalidate
Accept-Patch: application/yang-data+xml, application/yang-data+json
Pragma: no-cache

root:~#
```

POST (Create) Request

The POST operation creates a configuration which is not present in the targeted device.

Ensure that the logging monitor command is not available in the running configuration.

The following sample POST request uses the logging monitor alerts command.
Example: Configuring the RESTCONF Protocol

```
Device:~# curl -i -k -X "POST"
> -H 'Content-Type: application/yang-data+json' \
> -H 'Accept: application/yang-data+json' \
> -u 'admin:admin' \
> -d $'{
>   "severity": "alerts"
> }'
HTTP/1.1 201 Created
Server: nginx
Date: Mon, 23 Apr 2018 14:53:51 GMT
Content-Type: text/html
Content-Length: 0
Location: https://10.85.116.30/restconf/data/Cisco-IOS-XE-native:native/logging/monitor/severity
Connection: keep-alive
Last-Modified: Mon, 23 Apr 2018 14:53:51 GMT
Cache-Control: private, no-cache, must-revalidate, proxy-revalidate
Pragma: no-cache
Device:~#
```

**PUT: (Create or Replace) Request:**

If the specified command is not present on the device, the POST request creates it; however, if it is already present in the running configuration, the command will be replaced by this request.

The following sample PUT request uses the **logging monitor warnings** command.

```
Device:~# curl -i -k -X "PUT"
> -H 'Content-Type: application/yang-data+json'
> -H 'Accept: application/yang-data+json'
> -u 'admin:admin'
> -d $'{
>   "severity": "warnings"
> }'
HTTP/1.1 204 No Content
Server: nginx
Date: Mon, 23 Apr 2018 14:58:36 GMT
Content-Type: text/html
Content-Length: 0
Location: https://10.85.116.30/restconf/data/Cisco-IOS-XE-native:native/logging/monitor/severity
Connection: keep-alive
Last-Modified: Mon, 23 Apr 2018 14:57:46 GMT
Cache-Control: private, no-cache, must-revalidate, proxy-revalidate
Pragma: no-cache
Device:~#
```

**PATCH: (Update) Request**

The following sample PATCH request uses the **logging monitor informational** command.

```
Device:~# curl -i -k -X "PATCH"
```

```
> -H 'Content-Type: application/yang-data+json'
> -H 'Accept: application/yang-data+json'
> -u 'admin:admin'
> -d $'{
>   "severity": "informational"
> }'
HTTP/1.1 204 No Content
Server: nginx
Date: Mon, 23 Apr 2018 14:58:36 GMT
Content-Type: text/html
Content-Length: 0
Location: https://10.85.116.30/restconf/data/Cisco-IOS-XE-native:native/logging/monitor/severity
Connection: keep-alive
Last-Modified: Mon, 23 Apr 2018 14:57:46 GMT
Cache-Control: private, no-cache, must-revalidate, proxy-revalidate
Pragma: no-cache
Device:~#```
GET Request (To Read)

The following sample GET request uses the `logging monitor informational` command.

    -H 'Accept: application/yang-data+json' \
    -u 'admin:admin'
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Server: nginx
Date: Mon, 23 Apr 2018 15:10:59 GMT
Content-Type: application/yang-data+json
Transfer-Encoding: chunked
Connection: keep-alive
Cache-Control: private, no-cache, must-revalidate, proxy-revalidate
Pragma: no-cache
Device:~#

DELETE Request (To Delete the Configuration)

    -H 'Content-Type: application/yang-data+json' \
    -H 'Accept: application/yang-data+json' \
    -u 'admin:admin'
HTTP/1.1 204 No Content
Server: nginx
Date: Mon, 23 Apr 2018 15:26:05 GMT
Content-Type: text/html
Content-Length: 0
Additional References for the RESTCONF Protocol

Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>YANG data models for various releases of IOS XE, IOS XR, and NX-OS platforms</td>
<td>To access Cisco YANG models in a developer-friendly way, please clone the GitHub repository, and navigate to the vendor/ciscosubdirectory. Models for various releases of IOS-XE, IOS-XR, and NX-OS platforms are available here.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Standards and RFCs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard/RFC</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RFC 6020</td>
<td>YANG - A Data Modeling Language for the Network Configuration Protocol (NETCONF)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFC 8040</td>
<td>Representational State Transfer Configuration Protocol (RESTCONF)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/index.html">https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/index.html</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Feature Information for the RESTCONF Protocol

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Table 15: Feature Information for RESTCONF Network Management Interface

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Releases</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RESTCONF Network Management Interface</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.6.1</td>
<td>This chapter describes how to set-up and configure an HTTP-based protocol- Representational State Transfer Configuration Protocol (RESTCONF). RESTCONF provides a programmatic interface based on standard mechanisms for accessing configuration data, state data, data-model-specific Remote Procedure Call (RPC) operations and event notifications defined in the YANG model. This feature was introduced on the ASR 1000 Aggregation Services Routers-ASR1001-HX and ASR1002-HX, CSR 1000v Series Cloud Services Router, and Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers (ISRs). The following commands were introduced or modified: ip http server and restconf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
<td></td>
<td>This feature was implemented on the following platforms: • Cisco Catalyst 3650 Series Switches • Cisco Catalyst 3850 Series Switches • Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches • Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switches • Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>This feature was implemented on the following platforms: • Cisco Catalyst 9200 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 10

**gNMI Protocol**

This feature describes the model-driven configuration and retrieval of operational data using the gNMI CAPABILITIES, GET and SET RPCs. gNMI version 0.4.0 is supported.

- Restrictions for gNMI Protocol, on page 121
- Information About the gNMI Protocol, on page 122
- How to Enable the gNMI Protocol, on page 128
- Configuration Examples for Enabling the gNMI Protocol, on page 133
- Additional References for the gNMI Protocol, on page 133
- Feature Information for the gNMI Protocol, on page 134

**Restrictions for gNMI Protocol**

- Use of the Origin field in the path message is not supported. A non-empty value will cause an error to be returned.

- Subscribe RPC services

- JSON, BYTES, PROTO, and ASCI encoding options

  JSON keys must contain a YANG-prefix where the namespace of the following elements differs from the parent. This means that the routed-vlan derived from augmentation in openconfig-vlan.yang must be entered as oc-vlan:routed-vlan because it is different from the namespace of the parent nodes (parent nodes have the prefix, oc-if)

- GetRequest:
  - Operational data type
  - Use models

- GetResponse Notifications
  - Alias
  - Delete

- In a SetRequest, wildcards and all keys are not supported. Only fully-specified paths are supported.
Information About the gNMI Protocol

About GNMI

gNMI is gRPC network management protocol developed by Google. gNMI provides the mechanism to install, manipulate, and delete the configuration of network devices, and also to view operational data. The content provided through gNMI can be modeled using YANG.

gRPC is a remote procedure call developed by Google for low-latency, scalable distributions with mobile clients communicating to a cloud server. gRPC carries gNMI, and provides the means to formulate and transmit data and operation requests.

When a failure occurs, the gNMI broker (GNMIB) will indicate an operational change of state from up to down, and all RPCs will return a service unavailable message until the database is up and running. Upon recovery, the GNMIB will indicate a change of operation state from down to up, and resume normal handling of RPCs.

Overview of RFC 7951

RFC 7951 defines JavaScript Object Notation (JSON) encoding for YANG data trees and their subtrees. Instances of YANG data nodes (leafs, containers, leaf-lists, lists, anydata nodes, and anyxml nodes) are encoded as members of a JSON object or name/value pairs. Encoding rules are identical for all types of data trees, such as configuration data, state data, parameters of RPC operations, actions, and notifications.

Every data node instance is encoded as a name/value pair where the name is formed from the data node identifier. The value depends on the category of the data node.

The "leaf" Data Node

A leaf node has a value, but no children, in a data tree. A leaf instance is encoded as a name/value pair. The value can be a string, number, literal "true" or "false", or the special array "[null]", depending on the type of the leaf. In the case that the data item at the specified path is a leaf node (i.e., has no children, and an associated value) the value of that leaf is encoded directly - i.e., the "bare" value is specified (i.e., a JSON object is not required, and a bare JSON value is included).

The following example shows a leaf node definition:

```
leaf foo {
  type uint8;
}
```

The following is a valid JSON-encoded instance:

```
"foo": 123
```

gNMI GET Request

The gNMI GET RPC specifies how to retrieve one or more of the configuration attributes, state attributes, derived state attributes, or all attributes associated with a supported mode from a data tree. A GetRequest is sent from a client to the target to retrieve values from the data tree. A GetResponse is sent in response to a GetRequest.
The following example shows a Get Request on JSON structure:

Creating a path object for xpath: /oc-if:interfaces/interface[name=Loopback111]

Sending get request: 

```plaintext
path {
    elem {
        name: "oc-if:interfaces"
    }
    elem {
        name: "interface"
        key {
            key: "name"
            value: "Loopback111"
        }
    }
}
```

Encoding: JSON-IETF

Receiving get response:

```plaintext
notification {
    timestamp: 1521699434792345469
    update {
        path {
            elem {
                name: "oc-if:interfaces"
            }
            elem {
                name: "interface"
                key {
                    key: "name"
                    value: "Loopback111"
                }
            }
        }
        val {
            json_ietf_val: "{\n                "openconfig-interfaces:name": "Loopback111",
                "openconfig-interfaces:config": {\n                    "openconfig-interfaces:type": "ianaift:softwareLoopback",
                    "openconfig-interfaces:name": "Loopback111",
                    "openconfig-interfaces:enabled": true,
                    "openconfig-interfaces:state": {\n                        "openconfig-interfaces:type": "ianaift:softwareLoopback",
                        "openconfig-interfaces:name": "Loopback111",
                        "openconfig-interfaces:enabled": true,
                        "openconfig-interfaces:admin-status": "UP",
                        "openconfig-interfaces:oper-status": "UP",
                        "openconfig-interfaces:last-change": 2018,
                        "openconfig-interfaces:counters": {\n                            "openconfig-interfaces:in-octets": 0,
                            "openconfig-interfaces:in-unicast-pkts": 0,
                            "openconfig-interfaces:in-broadcast-pkts": 0,
                            "openconfig-interfaces:in-multicast-pkts": 0,
                            "openconfig-interfaces:in-discards": 0,
                            "openconfig-interfaces:in-errors": 0,
                            "openconfig-interfaces:in-unknown-protos": 0,
                            "openconfig-interfaces:out-octets": 0,
                            "openconfig-interfaces:out-unicast-pkts": 0,
                            "openconfig-interfaces:out-broadcast-pkts": 0,
                            "openconfig-interfaces:out-multicast-pkts": 0,
                            "openconfig-interfaces:out-discards": 0,
                            "openconfig-interfaces:out-errors": 0,
                            "openconfig-interfaces:last-clear": 2018,
                            "openconfig-platform:hardware-port": "Loopback111"
                        },
                        "openconfig-interfaces:subinterfaces": []
                    }
                }
            }
        }
    }
}
```
The following example shows a GetRequest on a leaf on JSON structure:

Creating a path object for xpath:
```
/oc-if:interfaces/interface[name=Loopback111]/state/oper-status
```

++++++ Sending get request: ++++++++  
```
path {
  elem {
    name: "oc-if:interfaces"
  }
  elem {
    name: "interface"
    key {
      key: "name"
      value: "Loopback111"
    }
  }
  elem {
    name: "state"
  }
  elem {
    name: "oper-status"
  }
}
```

encoding: JSON_IETF  
++++++ Received get response: ++++++++  
```
notification {
  timestamp: 1521699326012374332
  update {
    path {
      elem {
        name: "true"
      }
    }
  }
}
```
gNMI SetRequest

The Set RPC specifies how to set one or more configurable attributes associated with a supported model. A SetRequest is sent from a client to a target to update the values in the data tree.

In a SetRequest, only fully-specified (wildcards, and all keys-specified paths are not supported.) paths, and "json_ietf_val" or "json_val" TypedValue are supported. JSON keys must contain a YANG-prefix, in which the namespace of the following element differs from parent. The “routed-vlan” element derived from augmentation in openconfig-vlan.yang must be entered as “oc-vlan:routed-vlan”, because it is different from the namespace of the parent node (The parent node prefix is oc-if).

The total set of deletes, replace, and updates contained in any one SetRequest is treated as a single transaction. If any subordinate element of the transaction fails; the entire transaction will be disallowed and rolled back. A SetResponse is sent back for a SetRequest.

The following example shows a SetRequest on JSON structure:

```json
Creating UPDATE update for /oc-if:interfaces/interface[name=Loopback111]/config/
Creating a path object for xpath: /oc-if:interfaces/interface[name=Loopback111]/config/
++++++++++ Sending set request: ++++++++ update {
  path { 
    elem { 
      name: "oc-if:interfaces"
    }
    elem { 
      name: "interface"
      key { 
        key: "name"
        value: "\"Loopback111\"
      }
    }
    elem { 
      name: "config"
    }
  }
  val { 
    json_ietf_val: "\"UP\"
  }
}
```

**Creating UPDATE update for /oc-if:interfaces/interface[name=Loopback111]/config/**

**Creating a path object for xpath: /oc-if:interfaces/interface[name=Loopback111]/config/**

**++++++++++ Sending set request: ++++++++**

```json
update {
  path { 
    elem { 
      name: "oc-if:interfaces"
    }
    elem { 
      name: "interface"
      key { 
        key: "name"
        value: "\"Loopback111\"
      }
    }
    elem { 
      name: "config"
    }
  }
  val { 
    json_ietf_val: "\"openconfig-interfaces:enabled\":\"false\"
  }
}
```
The following example shows a SetRequest on leaf on JSON structure:

Creating UPDATE update for /oc-if:interfaces/interface[name=Loopback111]/config/description

Creating a path object for xpath:
/oc-if:interfaces/interface[name=Loopback111]/config/description

++++++ Sending set request: +++++++

update {
path {
  elem {
    name: "oc-if:interfaces"
  }
  elem {
    name: "interface"
    key {
      key: "name"
      value: "Loopback111"
    }
  }
  elem {
    name: "config"
  }
  elem {
    name: "description"
  }
}
val {
  json_ietf_val: "UPDATE DESCRIPTION"
}
}

++++++ Received set response: +++++++

response {
  path {
    elem {
      name: "oc-if:interfaces"
    }
    elem {
      name: "interface"
      key {
        key: "name"
        value: "Loopback111"
      }
    }
    elem {
      name: "config"
    }
    key {
      key: "name"
The JSON type indicates that the value is encoded as a JSON string as specified in RFC 7159. Additional types (such as, JSON_IETF) indicate specific additional characteristics of the encoding of the JSON data (particularly where they relate to serialisation of YANG-modeled data).

The following is a sample JSON_iwf_val message:

```json
  val {
    json_iwf_val: "{
      "oc-if:config": {
        "oc-if:description": "UPDATE DESCRIPTION"
      }"}
  }
```

### gNMI Error Messages

When errors occur, gNMI returns descriptive error messages. The following section displays some gNMI error messages.

The following sample error message is displayed when the path is invalid:

```
gNMI Error Response:
  <_Rendezvous of RPC that terminated with (StatusCode.ABORTED,
  An error occurred while parsing provided xpath: unknown tag: "someinvalidxpath" Additional information: badly formatted or nonexistent path)>
```

The following sample error message is displayed for an unimplemented error:

```
gNMI Error Response:
  <_Rendezvous of RPC that terminated with (StatusCode.UNIMPLEMENTED,
  Requested encoding "ASCII" not supported)>
```

The following sample error message is displayed when the data element is empty:

```
gNMI Error Response:
  <_Rendezvous of RPC that terminated with (StatusCode.NOT_FOUND,
```
How to Enable the gNMI Protocol

Creating Certs with OpenSSL on Linux

Certs and trustpoint are only required for secure gNMI servers.

The following example shows how to create Certs with OpenSSL on a Linux machine:

```
# Setting up a CA
openssl genrsa -out rootCA.key 2048
openssl req -subj /C=/ST=/L=/O=/CN=rootCA -x509 -new -nodes -key rootCA.key -sha256 -out rootCA.pem

# Setting up device cert and key
openssl genrsa -out device.key 2048
openssl req -subj /C=/ST=/L=/O=/CN=<hostnameFQDN> -new -key device.key -out device.csr
openssl x509 -req -in device.csr -CA rootCA.pem -CAkey rootCA.key -CAcreateserial -out device.crt -sha256

# Encrypt device key - needed for input to IOS
openssl rsa -des3 -in device.key -out device.des3.key -passout pass:<password - remember this for later>

# Setting up client cert and key
openssl genrsa -out client.key 2048
openssl req -subj /C=/ST=/L=/O=/CN=gnmi_client -new -key client.key -out client.csr
openssl x509 -req -in client.csr -CA rootCA.pem -CAkey rootCA.key -CAcreateserial -out client.crt -sha256
```

Installing Certs on a Device

The following example show how to install certs on a device:

```
# Send:
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# crypto pki import trustpoint1 pem terminal password password1

# Receive:
% Enter PEM-formatted CA certificate.
% End with a blank line or "quit" on a line by itself.

# Send:
# Contents of rootCA.pem, followed by newline + 'quit' + newline:
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
<snip>
-----END CERTIFICATE-----
quit

# Receive:
% Enter PEM-formatted encrypted private General Purpose key.
% End with "quit" on a line by itself.

# Send:
# Contents of device.des3.key, followed by newline + 'quit' + newline:
-----BEGIN RSA PRIVATE KEY-----
Enabling gNMI in Insecure Mode

To stop gNMI in insecure mode, use the no gnmi-yang server command.

**Note**
gNMI insecure and secure servers can run simultaneously.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. gnmi-yang
4. gnmi-yang server
5. gnmi-yang port *port-number*
6. end
7. show gnmi-yang state

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gnmi-yang</td>
<td>Starts the gNMIb process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# gnmi-yang</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gnmi-yang server</td>
<td>Enables the gNMI server in insecure mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# gnmi-yang server</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gnmi-yang port port-number</td>
<td>Sets the gNMI port to listen to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Optional) Device(config)# gnmi-yang port 50000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show gnmi-yang state</td>
<td>Displays the status of gNMI servers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# show gnmi-yang state</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example**

The following is sample output from the `show gnmi-yang state` command:

```
Device# show gnmi-yang state

State     Status
----------
Enabled   Up
```

**Enabling gNMI in Secure Mode**

To stop gNMI in secure mode, use the `no gnmi-yang secure-server` command.

---

**Note**

GNI insecure and secure servers can run simultaneously.
SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. gnmi-yang
4. gnmi-yang secure-server
5. gnmi-yang secure-trustpoint trustpoint-name
6. gnmi-yang secure-client-auth
7. gnmi-yang secure-port
8. end
9. showgnmi-yang state

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> gnmi-yang</td>
<td>Starts the gNMIb process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# gnmi-yang</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> gnmi-yang secure-server</td>
<td>Enables the gNMI server in secure mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# gnmi-yang secure-server</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> gnmi-yang secure-trustpoint trustpoint-name</td>
<td>Specifies the trustpoint and cert set that gNMI uses for authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# gnmi-yang secure-trustpoint trustpoint1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> gnmi-yang secure-client-auth</td>
<td>(Optional) The gNMIb process authenticates the client certificate against the root certificate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# gnmi-yang secure-client-auth</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> gnmi-yang secure-port</td>
<td>(Optional) Sets the gNMI port to listen to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# gnmi-yang secure-port</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong> end</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Connecting the gNMI Client

The gNMI client is connected by using the client and root certificates that are previously configured.

The following example shows how to connect the gNMI client using Python:

```python
# gRPC Must be compiled in local dir under path below:
>>> import sys
>>> sys.path.insert(0, "reference/rpc/gnmi/")
>>> import grpc
>>> import gnmi_pb2
>>> import gnmi_pb2_grpc
>>> gnmi_dir = '/path/to/where/openssl/creds/were/generated/

# Certs must be read in as bytes
>>> with open(gnmi_dir + 'rootCA.pem', 'rb') as f:
>>>     ca_cert = f.read()
>>> with open(gnmi_dir + 'client.crt', 'rb') as f:
>>>     client_cert = f.read()
>>> with open(gnmi_dir + 'client.key', 'rb') as f:
>>>     client_key = f.read()

# Create credentials object
>>> credentials = grpc.ssl_channel_credentials(root_certificates=ca_cert,
private_key=client_key, certificate_chain=client_cert)

# Create a secure channel:
# Default port is 50052, can be changed on ios device with 'gnmi-yang secure-port ####'
>>> port = 50052
>>> host = <HOSTNAME FQDN>
>>> secure_channel = grpc.secure_channel("%s:%d" % (host, port), credentials)

# Create secure stub:
>>> secure_stub = gnmi_pb2_grpc.gNMIStub(secure_channel)

# Done! Let's test to make sure it works:
>>> secure_stub.Capabilities(gnmi_pb2.CapabilityRequest())
```

Example

The following is sample output from the `showgnmi-yang state` command:

```
Device# show gnmi-yang state

State Status
-------------------
Enabled Up
```

Connecting the gNMI Client

The gNMI client is connected by using the client and root certificates that are previously configured.

The following example shows how to connect the gNMI client using Python:

```python
# gRPC Must be compiled in local dir under path below:
>>> import sys
>>> sys.path.insert(0, "reference/rpc/gnmi/")
>>> import grpc
>>> import gnmi_pb2
>>> import gnmi_pb2_grpc
>>> gnmi_dir = '/path/to/where/openssl/creds/were/generated/

# Certs must be read in as bytes
>>> with open(gnmi_dir + 'rootCA.pem', 'rb') as f:
>>>     ca_cert = f.read()
>>> with open(gnmi_dir + 'client.crt', 'rb') as f:
>>>     client_cert = f.read()
>>> with open(gnmi_dir + 'client.key', 'rb') as f:
>>>     client_key = f.read()

# Create credentials object
>>> credentials = grpc.ssl_channel_credentials(root_certificates=ca_cert,
private_key=client_key, certificate_chain=client_cert)

# Create a secure channel:
# Default port is 50052, can be changed on ios device with 'gnmi-yang secure-port ####'
>>> port = 50052
>>> host = <HOSTNAME FQDN>
>>> secure_channel = grpc.secure_channel("%s:%d" % (host, port), credentials)

# Create secure stub:
>>> secure_stub = gnmi_pb2_grpc.gNMIStub(secure_channel)

# Done! Let's test to make sure it works:
>>> secure_stub.Capabilities(gnmi_pb2.CapabilityRequest())
```

Example

The following is sample output from the `showgnmi-yang state` command:

```
Device# show gnmi-yang state

State Status
-------------------
Enabled Up
```
Configuration Examples for Enabling the gNMI Protocol

Example: Enabling the gNMI Protocol

Example: Enabling gNMI in Insecure Mode

The following example shows how to enable the gNMI server in insecure mode:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# gnmi-yang
Device(config)# gnmi-yang server
Device(config)# gnmi-yang port 50000 <The default port is 50052.>
Device(config)# end
Device
```

Example: Enabling gNMI in Secure Mode

The following example shows how to enable the gNMI server in secure mode:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# gnmi-yang server
Device(config)# gnmi-yang secure-server
Device(config)# gnmi-yang secure-trustpoint trustpoint1
Device(config)# gnmi-yang secure-client-auth
Device(config)# gnmi-yang secure-port 50001 <The default port is 50051.>
Device(config)# end
Device
```

Additional References for the gNMI Protocol

Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Open config information</td>
<td>• <a href="https://github.com/openconfig/reference/blob/master/rpc/gnmi/gnmi.proto">https://github.com/openconfig/reference/blob/master/rpc/gnmi/gnmi.proto</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gNMI</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/openconfig/reference/blob/master/rpc/gnmi/gnmi-specification.md">https://github.com/openconfig/reference/blob/master/rpc/gnmi/gnmi-specification.md</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Standards and RFCs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard/RFC</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RFC 7951</td>
<td>JSON Encoding of Data Modeled with YANG</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MIBs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MIB</th>
<th>MIB Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CAPABILITIES-MIB</td>
<td>To locate and download MIBs for selected platforms, Cisco IOS releases, and feature sets, use Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs">http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/support">http://www.cisco.com/support</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature Information for the gNMI Protocol

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature. Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.
### Table 16: Feature Information for the gNMI Protocol

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| gNMI Protocol      | Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a| This feature describes the model-driven configuration and retrieval of operational data using the gNMI capabilities, GET and SET RPCs.  
                        |                          | This feature was implemented on the following platforms:  
                        |                          | • Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches  
                        |                          | • Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switches  
                        |                          | • Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches |
|                   | Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.10.1 | gNMI namespaces and gNMI wildcards support were added to the following platforms:  
                        |                          | • Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches  
                        |                          | • Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switches  
                        |                          | • Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches |
Model Based AAA

The NETCONF and RESTCONF interfaces implement the NETCONF Access Control Model (NACM). NACM is a form of role-based access control (RBAC) specified in RFC 6536.

- Model Based AAA, on page 137
- Additional References for Model Based AAA, on page 143
- Feature Information for Model-Based AAA, on page 143

Model Based AAA

Prerequisites for Model Based AAA

Working with the model based AAA feature requires prior understanding of the following:

- NETCONF-YANG
- NETCONF-YANG kill-session
- RFC 6536: Network Configuration Protocol (NETCONF) Access Control Model

Initial Operation

Upon enabling the NETCONF and/or RESTCONF services, a device that has no prior configuration of the /nacm subtree will deny read, write, and execute access to all operations and data other than the users of privilege level 15. This is described in the following configuration of the /nacm subtree:

```
<nacm xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:yang:ietf-netconf-acm">
  <enable-nacm>true</enable-nacm>
  <read-default>deny</read-default>
  <write-default>deny</write-default>
  <exec-default>deny</exec-default>
  <enable-external-groups>true</enable-external-groups>
  <rule-list>
    <rule>
      <name>admin</name>
      <group>PRIV15</group>
    </rule>
    <rule>
      <name>permit-all</name>
      <module-name>*</module-name>
      <access-operations>*</access-operations>
      <action>permit</action>
    </rule>

```
Group Membership

The group membership of a user can come from two sources—first, from the privilege level of the user as configured on the AAA server used for authorization, and second, from those configured in the /nacm/groups subtree. The names of the groups that correspond to each privilege level are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Privilege level</th>
<th>NACM group name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>PRIV00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>PRIV01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>PRIV02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>PRIV03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>PRIV04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>PRIV05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>PRIV06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>PRIV07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>PRIV08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>PRIV09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>PRIV10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>PRIV11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>PRIV12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>PRIV13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>PRIV14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>PRIV15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Traditional IOS command authorization, such as those based on privilege level, does not apply to NETCONF or RESTCONF.

Note: Access granted to a NACM group based on a privilege level do not inherently apply to NACM groups with higher privilege level. For example, rules that apply to PRIV10 do not automatically apply to PRIV11, PRIV12, PRIV13, PRIV14, and PRIV15 as well.
NACM Privilege Level Dependencies

If the AAA configuration is configured with no aaa new-model, the privilege level locally configured for the user is used. If the AAA configuration is configured with aaa new-model, the privilege level is determined by the AAA servers associated with the method list aaa authorization exec default.

NACM Configuration Management and Persistance

The NACM configuration can be modified using NETCONF or RESTCONF. In order for a user to be able to access the NCAM configuration, they must have explicit permission to do so, that is, through a NACM rule. Configuration under the /nacm subtree persists when the copy running-config startup-config EXEC command is issued, or the cisco-ia:save-config RPC is issued.

```xml
<rpc message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
  <save-config xmlns="http://cisco.com/yang/cisco-ia"/>
</rpc>
```

The NACM rules that apply to a NETCONF session are those that are configured in the /nacm subtree at the time of session establishment. Modifying the /nacm subtree has no effect on NETCONF sessions as they are already established. The <kill-session> RPC or the clear netconf-yang session EXEC command can be used to forcibly end an unwanted NETCONF session. See NETCONF Kill Session, on page 93.

Note

Care should be taken when crafting rules to deny access to certain data as the same data may be exposed through multiple YANG modules and data node paths. For example, interface configuration is exposed through both Cisco-IOS-XE-native and ietf-interface. Rules that may apply to one representation of the same underlying data may not apply to other representations of that data.

Resetting the NACM Configuration

Use the following command to reset the /nacm subtree configuration to the initial configuration (see Initial Operation).

Router#request platform software yang-management nacm reset-config

Sample NACM Configuration

The examples in this section are for illustrative purposes only.

The following is a sample for groups configuration.

```xml
<nacm xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:yang:ietf-netconf-acm">
  <groups>
    <group>
      <name>administrators</name>
      <user-name>admin</user-name>
      <user-name>root</user-name>
    </group>
  </groups>
</nacm>
```
Table 17: Description of the Configuration Parameters for Groups Configuration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;name&gt;administrators&lt;/name&gt;</td>
<td>Group name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;user-name&gt;admin&lt;/user-name&gt;</td>
<td>User name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;user-name&gt;root&lt;/user-name&gt;</td>
<td>User name</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following is a sample for creating module rules.

```xml
<nacm xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:yang:ietf-netconf-acm">
  <rule-list>
    <name>only-ietf-interfaces</name>
    <group>limited-permission</group>
    <rule>
      <name>deny-native</name>
      <module-name>Cisco-IOS-XE-native</module-name>
      <access-operations>*</access-operations>
      <action>deny</action>
    </rule>
    <rule>
      <name>allow-ietf-interfaces</name>
      <module-name>ietf-interfaces</module-name>
      <access-operations>*</access-operations>
      <action>permit</action>
    </rule>
  </rule-list>
</nacm>
```

Table 18: Description of the Configuration Parameters for Creating Module Rules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;name&gt;only-ietf-interfaces&lt;/name&gt;</td>
<td>Unique rule-list name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;group&gt;limited-permission&lt;/group&gt;</td>
<td>Groups that rule-list applies to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;name&gt;deny-native&lt;/name&gt;</td>
<td>Unique rule name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;module-name&gt;Cisco-IOS-XE-native&lt;/module-name&gt;</td>
<td>Name of the YANG module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;access-operations&gt;*&lt;/access-operations&gt;</td>
<td>CRUDx operation types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;action&gt;deny&lt;/action&gt;</td>
<td>Permit/deny</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following is a sample for creating protocol operation rules.
Table 19: Description of the Configuration Parameters for Creating Protocol Operation Rules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;name&gt;only-get&lt;/name&gt;</td>
<td>Unique rule-list name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;group&gt;limited-permission&lt;/group&gt;</td>
<td>Groups that rule-list applies to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;name&gt;deny-edit-config&lt;/name&gt;</td>
<td>Unique rule name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;module-name&gt;ietf-netconf&lt;/module-name&gt;</td>
<td>Name of module containing the RPC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;rpc-name&gt;edit-config&lt;/rpc-name&gt;</td>
<td>Name of the RPC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;access-operations&gt;exec&lt;/access-operations&gt;</td>
<td>Execute permission for the RPC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;action&gt;deny&lt;/action&gt;</td>
<td>Permit/deny</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following is a sample for creating data node rules.

```xml
<nacm xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:yang:ietf-netconf-acm">
  <rule-list>
    <name>hide-enable-passwords</name>
    <group>limited-permission</group>

    <rule>
      <name>deny-enable-passwords</name>
      <access-operations>*</access-operations>
      <action>deny</action>
    </rule>
  </rule-list>
</nacm>
```
Table 20: Description of the Configuration Parameters for Creating Data Node Rules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;name&gt;</code> hide-enable-passwords&lt;/name&gt;</td>
<td>Unique rule-list name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;group&gt;</code> limited-permission&lt;/group&gt;</td>
<td>Groups that rule-list applies to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;name&gt;</code> deny-enable-passwords&lt;/name&gt;</td>
<td>Unique rule name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;path xmlns:ios='http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XE-native'&gt;ios:native/enable&lt;/path&gt;</code></td>
<td>Path to the data node being granted/denied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;access-operations&gt;</code>*<code>&lt;/access-operations&gt;</code></td>
<td>CRUDx operation types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;action&gt;</code> deny<code>&lt;/action&gt;</code></td>
<td>Permit/deny</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following is an example NACM configuration that permits all groups to use the standard NETCONF RPCs `<get>` and `<get-config>`, the schema download RPC `<get-schema>`, and read-only access to the data in the module `ietf-interfaces`:

```xml
<nacm xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:yang:ietf-netconf-acm">
  <rule-list>
    <name>readonly-protocol</name>
    <group>*</group>
    <rule>
      <name>get-permit</name>
      <module-name>ietf-netconf</module-name>
      <rpc-name>get</rpc-name>
      <access-operations>exec</access-operations>
      <action>permit</action>
    </rule>
    <rule>
      <name>get-config-permit</name>
      <module-name>ietf-netconf</module-name>
      <rpc-name>get-config</rpc-name>
      <access-operations>exec</access-operations>
      <action>permit</action>
    </rule>
    <rule>
      <name>get-schema-permit</name>
      <module-name>ietf-netconf-monitoring</module-name>
      <rpc-name>get-schema</rpc-name>
      <access-operations>exec</access-operations>
      <action>permit</action>
    </rule>
  </rule-list>
  <rule-list>
    <name>readonly-data</name>
    <group>*</group>
    <rule>
      <name>ietf-interfaces-permit</name>
      <module-name>ietf-interfaces</module-name>
      <access-operations>read</access-operations>
      <action>permit</action>
    </rule>
  </rule-list>
</nacm>
```
Additional References for Model Based AAA

Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>YANG data models for various release of IOS-XE, IOS-XR, and NX-OS platforms</td>
<td>To access Cisco YANG models in a developer-friendly way, please clone the GitHub repository, and navigate to the vendor/cisco subdirectory. Models for various releases of IOS-XE, IOS-XR, and NX-OS platforms are available here.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Standards and RFCs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard/RFC</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RFC 6020</td>
<td>YANG - A Data Modeling Language for the Network Configuration Protocol (NETCONF)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFC 6241</td>
<td>Network Configuration Protocol (NETCONF)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFC 6536</td>
<td>Network Configuration Protocol (NETCONF) Access Control Model</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/support">http://www.cisco.com/support</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature Information for Model-Based AAA

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.
Table 21: Feature Information for Programmability: Data Models

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Model-Based AAA</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1</td>
<td>This feature was implemented on the following platforms:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco ASR 900 Series Aggregated Services Routers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco ASR 920 Series Aggregated Services Routers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco ASR 1000 Series Aggregated Services Routers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco CSR 1000v Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco ISR 1100 Series Integrated Services Routers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco ISR 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco NCS 4200 Series</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</th>
<th>This feature was implemented on the following platforms:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 3650 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 3850 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Model-Driven Telemetry

Model-driven telemetry allows network devices to continuously stream real-time configuration and operating state information to subscribers.

Applications can subscribe to specific data items they need, by using standard-based YANG data models over NETCONF-YANG.

Structured data is published at a defined cadence, or on-change, based upon the subscription criteria and data type.

Prerequisites for Model-Driven Telemetry

- Knowledge of NETCONF-YANG and how to use it, including:
  - Establishing a NETCONF session.
  - Sending/receiving hello and capabilities messages.
  - Sending/receiving YANG XML remote procedure calls (RPCs) over the established NETCONF session. For more information, see the Configuration Example for NETCONF-YANG.

For more information on NETCONF-YANG, see the Datamodels chapter.

- Knowledge of XML, XML namespaces, and XML XPath.
- Knowledge of standards and principles defined by the IETF telemetry specification.
- NETCONF-YANG must be configured and running on the device. Verify that the following processes are running, by using the show platform software yang-management process command:

```
Device# show platform software yang-management process
confd : Running
nesd : Running
syncfd : Running
ncsshdd : Running
dmialuthd : Running
```
The process **pubd** is the model-driven telemetry process, and if it is not running, model-driven telemetry will not work.

- The **urn:ietf:params:netconf:capability:notification:1.1** capability must be listed in the hello message. This capability is advertised only on devices that support IETF telemetry.

## Information About Model-Driven Telemetry

### Model-Driven Telemetry Overview

Telemetry is an automated communications process by which measurements and other data are collected at remote or inaccessible points and transmitted to receiving equipment for monitoring. Model-driven telemetry provides a mechanism to stream data from a model-driven telemetry-capable device to a destination.

Telemetry uses a subscription model to identify information sources and destinations. Model-driven telemetry replaces the need for the periodic polling of network elements; instead, a continuous request for information to be delivered to a subscriber is established upon the network element. Then, either periodically, or as objects change, a subscribed set of YANG objects are streamed to that subscriber.

The data to be streamed is driven through subscriptions. Subscriptions allow applications to subscribe to updates (automatic and continuous updates) from a YANG datastore, and this enables the publisher to push and in effect stream those updates.

- **Note** Dynamic subscriptions are only supported.

### Subscription Overview

A subscription is a contract between a publisher and a subscriber that describes the following:

- The data that is wanted.
- When the data is wanted.
- How the data is wanted.

The data that is wanted is defined by the use of a stream and filters specific to the stream. For the model-driven telemetry feature, the stream is “yang-push” and the filter type is XPath, where the XPath expressions are based on the YANG model of the data of interest.

When the data is wanted can be set to be when it changes or at periodic intervals. Note that not all data is available when it changes.
How the data is wanted is specified by the encoding of the data and the transport protocol. Since the
model-driven telemetry feature supports only dynamic subscriptions over NETCONF, NETCONF is the only
transport supported and thus does not need explicit specification. XML is the only encoding supported.

As mentioned, the model-driven telemetry feature supports only dynamic subscriptions over NETCONF. This
means they are controlled by a NETCONF connected subscriber using NETCONF RPCs. The supported RPCs
include subscription establishment and subscription deletion.

Sample <establish-subscription> RPC

The following is a sample <establish-subscription> RPC. The stream, xpath-filter, and period fields in the
RPC are mandatory.

```xml
<rpc message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0" >
  <establish-subscription
    xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:yang:ietf-event-notifications"
    <stream>yp:yang-push</stream>
    <yp:period>1000</yp:period>
  </establish-subscription>
</rpc>
```

YANG-Push

RFC 6020: YANG - A Data Modeling Language for the Network Configuration Protocol (NETCONF) and
RFC 6241: Network Configuration Protocol (NETCONF) and explain YANG-push, which is the subscription
and push mechanism for YANG databases. YANG-push subscriptions are defined using a data model. Using
YANG-push, subscriber applications can request a continuous, customized stream of updates from YANG
databases. The YANG-push encompasses all data in the configuration and operational databases that is
described by the YANG model installed on a device. You must provide a filter for data, as subscription to all
data is not supported.

Note

The yang-push stream must be specified.

XPath Filter Support

The dataset within the “yang-push” stream to be subscribed to is specified by the use of an XPath filter.
However, XPath is far more expressive that is needed when specifying data for ‘yang-push’ streams, so the
following limitations are placed on the XPath expression:

1. It must specify a single object. That object can be a container, a leaf, a leaf-list or a list.

2. It may have keys to specify a single entry in a list or container. The supported key specification syntax is
   “[key name]={key value}”). Compound keys are supported by the use of multiple key specifications.
The key names and values must be exact; no ranges or wildcard values are supported.

3. The use of the union operator (|) is supported to allow a single subscription to support multiple objects.
Periodic Publication

With periodic subscriptions, the first push-update with the subscribed information is sent immediately; but it can be delayed if the device is busy or due to network congestion. Updates are then sent at the expiry of the configured periodic timer. For example, if the period is configured as 10 minutes, the first update is sent immediately after the subscription is created and every 10 minutes thereafter.

Period is time, in centiseconds (1/100 of a second), between periodic push updates. A period of 1000 will result in getting updates to the subscribed information every 10 seconds. The minimum period interval is 100, or one second. There is no default value. This value must be explicitly set in the <establish subscription> RPC.

Subscriptions for data that does not currently exist are permitted and run as normal subscriptions. When subscribing for empty data, empty update notifications are sent at the requested period.

Periodic updates contain a full copy of the subscribed data element or table.

RPC Support in Telemetry

The <establish-subscription> and <delete-subscription> RPCs are supported for telemetry.

When an <establish-subscription> RPC is sent, the RPC reply from a publisher contains an <rpc-reply> message with a <subscription-result> element containing a result string.

The following table displays the response and the reason for the response in an <rpc-reply> message:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Result String</th>
<th>RPC</th>
<th>Cause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ok</td>
<td>&lt;establish-subscription&gt;</td>
<td>Success</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;delete-subscription&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>error-no-such-subscription</td>
<td>&lt;delete-subscription&gt;</td>
<td>The specified subscription does not exist.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>error-no-such-option</td>
<td>&lt;establish-subscription&gt;</td>
<td>The requested subscription is not supported.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>error-insufficient-resources</td>
<td>&lt;establish-subscription&gt;</td>
<td>A subscription cannot be created because of the following reasons:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• There are too many subscriptions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• The amount of data requested is considered too large.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• The interval for a periodic subscription is too small.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>error-other</td>
<td>&lt;establish-subscription&gt;</td>
<td>Some other error.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NETCONF Sessions in Telemetry

Telemetry subscriptions and updates are transmitted over NETCONF sessions. The NETCONF session that is used to establish a telemetry subscription receives the telemetry updates. If the NETCONF session is torn down or the connection is lost, associated telemetry subscriptions are also torn down.
All sessions are NETCONF sessions and as a result, all session limitations are specific to the NETCONF implementation.

**High Availability in Telemetry**

Dynamic telemetry connections are established over a NETCONF session via SSH to the active switch or a member in a switch stack, or the active route-processor in an high-availability capable router. After switchover, you must destroy and re-establish all sessions that use Crypto, including NETCONF sessions that carry telemetry subscriptions. You must also recreate all subscriptions after a switchover.

**Sample Model-Driven Telemetry RPCs**

**Creating a Subscription**

Subscriptions are created using XML RPCs over an established NETCONF session. The <establish-subscription> RPC is sent from an IETF telemetry client or collector to the network device. The stream, xpath-filter, and period fields in the RPC are mandatory.

The following is a sample subscription to the operational database subscriptions table:

```xml
<rpc message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
  <establish-subscription
    xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:yang:ietf-event-notifications"
    <stream></stream>
    <yp:period>1000</yp:period>
  </establish-subscription>
</rpc>
```

**Receiving a Response Code**

When a subscription is successfully created, the device responds with a subscription-result of notif-bis:ok and with a subscription ID. The following is a sample response RPC message:

```xml
<rpc-reply xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0" message-id="101">
  <subscription-result xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:yang:ietf-event-notifications">
    <notif-bis:ok/></subscription-result>
  <subscription-id xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:yang:ietf-event-notifications">2147484201</subscription-id>
</rpc-reply>
```

**Receiving Subscription Push-Updates**

Subscription updates pushed from the device are in the form of an XML RPC and are sent over the same NETCONF session on which these are created. The subscribed information element or tree is returned within the datastore-contents-xml tag. The following is a sample RPC message that provides the subscribed information:

```xml
<notification xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:notification:1.0">
  ...
</notification>
```
Retrieving Subscription Details

You can retrieve the list of current subscriptions by sending a <get> RPC to the Cisco-IOS-XE-mdt-oper model. You can also use the show telemetry ietf subscription command to display the list of current subscriptions.

The following is a sample <get> RPC message:

```xml
<rpc message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
  <get>
    <filter>
      <mdt-oper-data xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XE-mdt-oper">
        <mdt-subscriptions/>
      </mdt-oper-data>
    </filter>
  </get>
</rpc>
```

The following is a sample RPC reply:

```xml
<rpc-reply xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0" message-id="101">
  <data>
    <mdt-oper-data xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XE-mdt-oper">
      <mdt-subscriptions>
        <subscription-id>2147485164</subscription-id>
        <base>
          <stream>yang-push</stream>
          <encoding>encode-xml</encoding>
          <period>100</period>
          <xpath>/ios:native/router/ios-rip:rip/ios-rip:version</xpath>
        </base>
        <type>sub-type-dynamic</type>
      </mdt-subscriptions>
    </mdt-oper-data>
  </data>
</rpc-reply>
```
The following is sample output from the `show telemetry ietf subscription dynamic brief` command:

```
Device# show telemetry ietf subscription dynamic brief

Telemetry subscription brief

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>State</th>
<th>Filter type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2147483667</td>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Valid</td>
<td>xpath</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2147483668</td>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Valid</td>
<td>xpath</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2147483669</td>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Valid</td>
<td>xpath</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

The following is sample output from the `show telemetry ietf subscription subscription-ID detail` command:

```
Device# show telemetry ietf subscription 2147483667 detail

Telemetry subscription detail:

Subscription ID: 2147483667
State: Valid
Stream: yang-push
Encoding: encode-xml
Filter:
  Filter type: xpath
  XPath: /mdt-oper:mdt-oper-data/mdt-subscriptions
Update policy:
  Update Trigger: periodic
  Period: 1000
Notes:
```

### Deleting a Subscription

You can delete a telemetry subscription in two ways. One is by sending a `<delete-subscription>` RPC with the subscription ID in the subscription-id tag, which only a subscriber can do. Also, a subscription is deleted when the parent NETCONF session is torn down or disconnected. If the network connection is interrupted, it may take some time for the SSH/NETCONF session to timeout, and subsequent subscriptions to be removed.

```
<rpc message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
    <subscription-id>2147483650</subscription-id>
  </delete-subscription>
</rpc>
```
Additional References for Model-Driven Telemetry

Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>YANG Explorer</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/CiscoDevNet/yang-explorer">https://github.com/CiscoDevNet/yang-explorer</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Standards and RFCs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard/RFC</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NETCONF Support for Event Notifications</td>
<td>draft-ietf-netconf-netconf-event-notifications-01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFC 6241</td>
<td>Network Configuration Protocol (NETCONF)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subscribing to Event Notifications</td>
<td>draft-ietf-netconf-rfc5277bis-01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subscribing to YANG Datastore Push Updates</td>
<td>draft-ietf-netconf-yang-push-04</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/support">http://www.cisco.com/support</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with Cisco products and technologies.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To receive security and technical information about your products, you can</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syndication (RSS) Feeds.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID and password.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature Information for Model-Driven Telemetry

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.
Table 22: Feature Information for Model-Driven Telemetry

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Model-Driven Telemetry NETCONF Dial-In</td>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.6.1</td>
<td>Model-driven telemetry allows network devices to continuously stream real time configuration and operating state information to subscribers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 3650 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 3850 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.6.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.7.1</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco ASR 1001-HX Series Aggregation Services Routers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco ASR 1001-X Series Aggregation Services Routers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco ASR 1002-HX Series Aggregation Services Routers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco ASR 1002-X Series Aggregation Services Routers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco ASR 1000 RP2 and RP3 Series Aggregation Services Routers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Cisco Catalyst 9500-High Performance Series Switches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature Name</td>
<td>Release</td>
<td>Feature Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
|              | Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.1 | • Cisco ASR 900 Series Aggregation Services Routers  
|              |         | • Cisco ASR 920 Series Aggregation Services Routers  
|              |         | • Cisco cBR-8 Converged Broadband Router  
|              |         | • Cisco Network Convergence System 4200 Series  
|              | Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.9.2 | Cisco Catalyst 9200 Series Switches |
In-Service Model Update

This module describes how to update the YANG data models on a device through an In-Service Model Update.

- Restrictions for In-Service Model Update, on page 155
- Information About In-Service Model Update, on page 155
- How to Manage In-Service Model Update, on page 158
- Configuration Examples for In-Service Model Updates, on page 159
- Feature Information for In-Service Model Update, on page 163

Restrictions for In-Service Model Update

- High availability or In-Service Software Upgrade (ISSU) is not supported. After a swichover, users must install the Software Maintenance Update (SMU) on standby device.

Information About In-Service Model Update

Overview of In-Service Model Updates

In-Service Model Update adds new data models or extend functionality to existing data models. The In-Service Model Update provides YANG model enhancements outside of a release cycle. The update package is a superset of all existing models; it includes all existing models as well as updated YANG models.

The data model infrastructure implements the YANG model-defined management interfaces for Cisco IOS XE devices. The data model infrastructure exposes the NETCONF interface northbound from Cisco IOS XE devices. The supported data models include industry standard models such as IETF, and Cisco IOS XE device-specific models.

The functionality provided by the In-Service Model Update is integrated into the subsequent Cisco IOS XE software maintenance release. Data model update packages can be downloaded from the Cisco Download Software Center.

Compatibility of In-Service Model Update Packages

An update package is built on a per release basis and is specific to a platform. This means that an update package for Cisco ASR 1000 Series Aggregation Services Routers cannot be installed on Cisco CSR 1000V...
Series Cloud Services Routers. Similarly, an update package built for Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.7.1 cannot be applied on a device that runs the Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.2 version.

All contents of an update package will be part of future mainline or maintenance release images. The image and platform versions are checked by the In-Service Model Update commands during the package add and activate. If an image or platform mismatch occurs, the package install fails.

**Update Package Naming Conventions**

In-Service Model Updates are packaged as a .bin files. This file includes all updates for a specific release and platform and the Readme file. These files have a release date and are updated periodically with additional model updates.

The naming convention of the data model update package follows the format—platform type-license level.release version.DDTS ID-file. The following is an example of a data model update file:

- isr4300-universalk9.16.05.01.CSCxxxxxxx.dmp.bin
- asr1000-universalk9.2017-08-23_17.48.0.CSCxxxxxxx.SSA.dmp.bin

The readme file provides the following information:

- Console and error messages during data model activation or deactivation
- Data model installation impact
- Side effects and possible workarounds
- Package(s) that the In-Service Model Update impacts
- Restart type

**Installing the Update Package**

You can install the In-Service Model Update package on a device by using the `install add`, `install activate`, and `install commit` commands in privileged EXEC mode.

The `install add` command copies the update package from a remote location to the device. You can also use other methods to copy the package; however, you must still enable the `install add` command for the installation to work. For the `install activate` command to work, the package must be available in the device bootflash. Enable the `install commit` command to make updates persistent over reloads.

Installing an update replaces any previously installed data models. At any time, only one update is installed on the device. A data model package includes all updated YANG models and all existing YANG models previously installed on the device.

The following flow chart explains how the model update package works:
Figure 5: Committing a Model Update Package

Process with Install Commit

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Install Add</th>
<th>Install Activate</th>
<th>Install Commit</th>
<th>Subsequent Reboots</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Copies new model update package to the device</td>
<td>Installs model update package copied in the previous step</td>
<td>Commits the recently installed model package so it persists</td>
<td>Device uses the recently installed model package</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If NETCONG-YANG is enabled during package activation, NETCONF processes are restarted. All active NETCONF sessions are killed during package activation. Failure during a package verification aborts the activation process.

Deactivating the Update Package

You can deactivate an update package by using the install deactivate command. Enable the install commit command to make changes persistent.

Table 23: Deactivating a Model Update Package

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Command to Use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To remove a package.</td>
<td>Use the install remove command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> Deactivate a package before removing it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To deactivate a package</td>
<td>Use the install deactivate command, followed by the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>install commit command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> The install commit command must be used to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ensure that the deactivation of the model package</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>is persistent across reloads. Subsequent attempts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>at removal of the package will fail, if the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>deactivation is not committed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When you deactivate an update, if more than one model update package is installed, the most recently committed model update package becomes the model package used by the device. If there are no other previously committed model packages, then the base version of data models included with the standard image is used.

Rollback of the Update Package

Rollback provides a mechanism to move a device back to the state in which it was operating prior to an update. After a rollback, NETCONF-YANG processes are restarted before changes are visible.

You can roll back an update to the base version, the last committed version, or a known commit ID by using the install rollback command.
How to Manage In-Service Model Update

Managing the Update Package

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. install add file tftp: filename
3. install activate file bootflash: filename
4. install commit
5. install deactivate file bootflash: filename
6. install commit
7. install rollback to {base | committed | id commit-ID}
8. install remove {file bootflash: filename | inactive}
9. show install summary

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> install add file tftp: filename</td>
<td>Copies the model update package from a remote location (via FTP, TFTP) to the device, and performs a compatibility check for the platform and image versions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# install add file tftp://172.16.0.1//tftpboot/folder1/ isr4300-universalk9.16.05.01.CSCxxxxxxx.dmp.bin</td>
<td>• You can use other methods to copy the update package from the remote location to the device, however; you still have to execute the <strong>install add</strong> command before the package is activated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> install activate file bootflash: filename</td>
<td>Validates whether the update package is added through the <strong>install add</strong> command, and restarts the NETCONF processes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# install activate file bootflash: isr4300-universalk9.16.05.01.CSCxxxxxxx.dmp.bin</td>
<td>• Perform the <strong>install add</strong> operation prior to activating an update package.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> install commit</td>
<td>Makes the changes persistent over reload.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# install commit</td>
<td>• NETCONF processes are not restarted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> install deactivate file bootflash: filename</td>
<td>Deactivates the specified update package, and restarts the NETCONF processes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

- Device# install deactivate file bootflash: isr4300-universalk9.16.05.01.CSCxxxxxxx.dmp.bin
- Device# install deactivate file bootflash: asr1000-universalk9.2017-08-23_17.48.0.CSCxxxxxxx.SSA.dmp.bin

### Purpose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Makes the changes persistent over reload.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- NETCONF processes are not restarted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rollbacks the update to the base version, the last committed version, or a known commit ID, and restarts NETCONF processes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Valid values for the <code>commit-id</code> argument are from 1 to 4294967295.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Older versions of data models updates are available for use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Removes the specified update package from the bootflash.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- A package must be deactivated before it is removed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Displays information about the active package.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- The output of this command varies according to the <code>install</code> commands that are configured.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Configuration Examples for In-Service Model Updates

#### Example: Managing an Update Package

The sample image used in the following examples are a Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Router image.

The following example shows how to add a model update package file:

```
Device# install add file tftp://172.16.0.1/tftpboot/folder1/isr4300-universalk9.16.05.01.CSCxxxxxxx.dmp.bin
install_add: START Sun Feb 26 05:57:04 UTC 2017
Download file tftp://172.16.0.1/tftpboot/folder1/isr4300-universalk9.16.05.01.CSCxxxxxxx.dmp.bin
Finished downloading file tftp://172.16.0.1/tftpboot/folder1/isr4300-universalk9.16.05.01.CSCxxxxxxx.dmp.bin to bootflash:isr4300-universalk9.16.05.01.CSCxxxxxxx.dmp.bin
Device# show install summary
```

---

**Model-Driven Programmability**

---

**Programmability Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.x**
SUCCESS: install_add /bootflash/isr4300-universalk9.16.05.01.CSCxxxxxxx.dmp.bin
Sun Feb 26 05:57:22 UTC 2017
Device#

The sample image used in the following examples are a Cisco ASR1000 Series Aggregated Services Router image.

The following example shows how to add a model update package file:

Device# install add file tftp://172.16.0.1/tftpboot/folder1/asr1000-universalk9.2017-08-23_17.48.0.CSCxxxxxxx.SSA.dmp.bin

SUCCESS: install_add /bootflash/asr1000-universalk9.2017-08-23_17.48.0.CSCxxxxxxx.SSA.dmp.bin
Sun Feb 26 05:57:22 UTC 2017
Device#

The following is sample output from the show install summary command after adding an update package file to the device:

Device# show install summary

Active Packages:
No packages
Inactive Packages:
bootflash: isr4300-universalk9.16.05.01.CSCxxxxxxx.dmp.bin
Committed Packages:
No packages
Uncommitted Packages:
No packages
Device#

The following example shows how to activate an added update package file:

Device# install activate file bootflash:
isr4300-universalk9.16.05.01.CSCxxxxxxx.dmp.bin

SUCCESS: install_activate /bootflash/isr4300-universalk9.16.05.01.CSCxxxxxxx.dmp.bin
Sun Feb 26 05:57:22 UTC 2017
Device#
The following sample output from the `show install summary` command displays the status of the model package as active and uncommitted:

```
Device# show install summary

Active Packages:
bootflash:isr4300-universalk9.16.05.01.CSCxxxxxxx.dmp.bin

Inactive Packages:
No packages

Committed Packages:
No packages

Uncommitted Packages:
bootflash:isr4300-universalk9.16.05.01.CSCxxxxxxx.dmp.bin
Device#
```

The following example shows how to execute the `install commit` command:

```
Device# install commit

install_commit: START Sun Feb 26 06:46:48 UTC 2017
SUCCESS: install_commit Sun Feb 26 06:46:52 UTC 2017
Device#
```

The following sample output from the `show install summary` command displays that the update package is now committed, and that it will be persistent across reloads:

```
Device# show install summary

Active Packages:
bootflash:isr4300-universalk9.16.05.01.CSCxxxxxxx.dmp.bin

Inactive Packages:
No packages

Committed Packages:
bootflash:isr4300-universalk9.16.05.01.CSCxxxxxxx.dmp.bin

Uncommitted Packages:
No packages
Device#
```

The following example shows how to rollback an update package to the base package:

```
Device# install rollback to base

install_rollback: START Sun Feb 26 06:50:29 UTC 2017
7 install_rollback: Restarting impacted processes to take effect
7 install_rollback: restarting confd
*Feb 26 06:50:34.957: %DMI-4-CONTROL_SOCKET_CLOSED: SIP0: syncfd:
  Confd control socket closed Lost connection to ConfD (45): EOF on socket to ConfD.
*Feb 26 06:50:34.962: %DMI-4-CONTROL_SOCKET_CLOSED: SIP0: nesd:
  Confd control socket closed Lost connection to ConfD (45): EOF on socket to ConfD.
*Feb 26 06:50:34.963: %DMI-4-SUB_READ_FAIL: SIP0: vtyserverutilid:
  Confd subscription socket read failed Lost connection to ConfD (45):
  EOF on socket to ConfD.Netconf processes stopped
7 install_rollback: DMP activate complete
SUCCESS: install_rollback Sun Feb 26 06:50:41 UTC 2017
*Feb 26 06:51:28.901: %DMI-5-SYNC_START: SIP0: syncfd:
  External change to running configuration detected.
The running configuration will be synchronized to the NETCONF running data store.
*Feb 26 06:51:30.339: %DMI-5-SYNC_COMPLETE: SIP0: syncfd:
The running configuration has been synchronized to the NETCONF running data store.
Device#
```
The following is sample output from the `show install package` command:

```
Device# show install package bootflash:
isr4300-universalk9.16.05.01.CSCxxxxxxx.dmp.bin
Name: isr4300-universalk9.16.05.01.CSCxxxxxxx.dmp.bin
Version: 16.5.1.0.199.1484082952..Everest
Platform: ISR4300
Package Type: dmp
Defect ID: CSCxxxxxxx
Package State: Added
Supersedes List: {}
Smu ID: 1
```

The following sample NETCONF hello message verifies the new data model package version:

```
Getting Capabilities: (admin @ 172.16.0.1:830)
PROTOCOL netconf
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<hello xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
    <capabilities>
        <capability>urn:ietf:params:netconf:base:1.0</capability>
        <capability>urn:ietf:params:netconf:base:1.1</capability>
        <capability>urn:ietf:params:netconf:capability:writable-running:1.0</capability>
        <capability>urn:ietf:params:netconf:capability:xpath:1.0</capability>
        <capability>urn:ietf:params:netconf:capability:validate:1.0</capability>
        <capability>urn:ietf:params:netconf:capability:validate:1.1</capability>
        <capability>urn:ietf:params:netconf:capability:rollback-on-error:1.0</capability>
        <capability>urn:ietf:params:netconf:capability:notification:1.0</capability>
        <capability>urn:ietf:params:netconf:capability:interleave:1.0</capability>
        <capability>http://tail-f.com/ns/netconf/actions/1.0</capability>
        <capability>http://tail-f.com/ns/netconf/extensions</capability>
        <capability>urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:yang:ietf-netconf-with-defaults?basic-mode=explicit&amp;also-supported=report-all-tagged</capability>
    </capabilities>
</hello>
```

The following is sample output from the `show install log` command:

```
Device# show install log
[0]install_op_boot]: START Fri Feb 24 19:20:19 Universal 2017
[0]install_op_boot]: END SUCCESS Fri Feb 24 19:20:23 Universal 2017
[3]install_add( FATAL]): File path (scp) is not yet supported for this command
[4]install_add]: START Sun Feb 26 05:57:04 UTC 2017
[4]install_add]: END SUCCESS /bootflash/isr4300-universalk9.16.05.01.CSCxxxxxxx.dmp.bin
Sun Feb 26 05:57:22 UTC 2017
[5]install_activate]: START Sun Feb 26 05:58:41 UTC 2017
```

The sample image used in the following examples are a Cisco Catalyst 3000 Series Switch image.

The following example shows how to add a model update package file:
Device# install add file tftp://172.16.0.1//tftpboot/folder1/cat3k_caa-universalk9.16.06.01.CSCxxxxxxx.dmp.bin

install_add: START Sat Jul 29 05:57:04 UTC 2017
Downloading file tftp://172.16.0.1//tftpboot/folder1/cat3k_caa-universalk9.16.06.01.CSCxxxxxxx.dmp.bin
Finished downloading file tftp://172.16.0.1//tftpboot/folder1/cat3k_caa-universalk9.16.06.01.CSCxxxxxxx.SPA.smu.bin
to bootflash:/cat3k_caa-universalk9.16.06.01.CSCxxxxxxx.dmp.bin
SUCCESS: install_add /bootflash:/cat3k_caa-universalk9.16.06.01.CSCxxxxxxx.dmp.bin
Sat Jul 29 05:57:22 UTC 2017
Device#

The following sample output from the `show install summary` command displays that the update package is now committed, and that it will be persistent across reloads:

Device# show install summary

Active Packages:
bootflash:/cat3k_caa-universalk9.16.06.01.CSCxxxxxxx.dmp.bin
Inactive Packages:
No packages
Committed Packages:
bootflash:/cat3k_caa-universalk9.16.06.01.CSCxxxxxxx.dmp.bin
Uncommitted Packages:
No packages
Device#

**Feature Information for In-Service Model Update**

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn). An account on Cisco.com is not required.
Table 24: Feature Information for In-Service Model Update

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| In-Service Model Update       | Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a  | This module describes how to update YANG data models through In-Service Model Update. In Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a, this feature was implemented on the following platforms:  
  • Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches  
  • Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches |
|                               | Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1b  | In Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1b, this feature was implemented on the following platforms:  
  • Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers  
  • Cisco Cloud Services Router 1000v  
  • Cisco Integrated Services Virtual Routers (ISRv)  
  The following commands were introduced or updated: `install (Programmability)`, `show install (Programmability)` |
|                               | Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.6.1  | In Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1b, this feature was implemented on the following platforms:  
  • Cisco Catalyst 3650 Series Switches  
  • Cisco Catalyst 3850 Series Switches |
|                               | Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.7.x         | In Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.7.x, this feature was implemented on the following platform:  
  • Cisco 1000 Series Aggregated Services Routers |
|                               | Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a         | In Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a, this feature was implemented on Cisco Catalyst 9500-High Performance Series Switches |
PART IV

Application Hosting

• Application Hosting, on page 167
Application Hosting

A hosted application is a software as a service (SaaS) solution, and it can be run remotely using commands. Application hosting gives administrators a platform for leveraging their own tools and utilities.

This module describes the Application Hosting feature and how to enable it.

- Restrictions for Application Hosting, on page 167
- Information About Application Hosting, on page 167
- How to Configure Application Hosting, on page 171
- Configuration Examples for Application Hosting, on page 183
- Feature Information for Application Hosting, on page 185

Restrictions for Application Hosting

Restrictions On Catalyst 9300 Series Switches, Catalyst 9400 Series Switches, and Catalyst 9500 Series Switches

- Network Address Translation (NAT) is not supported.
- Application hosting is not virtual routing and forwarding (VRF)-aware.
- Application hosting requires dedicated storage allocations, and is disabled on bootflash.
- On Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches and Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches, if a back-panel Cisco-certified USB flash is available, application hosting will run on it.
- In Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.1, the front-panel USB stick is not supported on Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switches; only hard disk drive (HDD) is supported for application hosting.

Information About Application Hosting

Need for Application Hosting

The move to virtual environments has given rise to the need to build applications that are reusable, portable, and scalable. Application hosting gives administrators a platform for leveraging their own tools and utilities.
An application, hosted on a network device, can serve a variety of purposes. This ranges from automation, configuration management monitoring, and integration with existing tool chains.

Cisco devices support third-party off-the-shelf applications built using Linux tool chains. Users can run custom applications cross-compiled with the software development kit that Cisco provides. Application hosting is offered in two variants: Kernel Virtual Machine (KVM) and Container.

**IOx Overview**

IOx is a Cisco-developed end-to-end application framework that provides application hosting capabilities for different application types on Cisco network platforms. The Cisco Guest Shell, a special container deployment, is one such application, that is useful in system deployment/use.

IOx facilitates the life-cycle management of app and data exchange by providing a set of services that helps developers to package pre-built apps, and host them on a target device. IOx life-cycle management includes distribution, deployment, hosting, starting, stopping (management), and monitoring of apps and data. IOx services also include app distribution and management tools that help users discover and deploy apps to the IOx framework.

App hosting provides the following features:

- Hides network heterogeneity.
- IOx application programming interfaces (APIs), remotely manage the life cycle of applications hosted on a device.
- Centralized app life-cycle management.
- Cloud-based developer experience.

**Cisco Application Hosting Overview**

Cisco application hosting framework is an IOx Python process that manages virtualized and container applications that run on devices.

Application hosting provides the following services:

- Launches designated applications in containers.
- Checks available resources (memory, CPU, and storage), and allocates and manages them.
- Provides support for console logging.
- Provides access to services via REST APIs.
- Provides a CLI endpoint.
- Provides an application hosting infrastructure referred to as Cisco Application Framework (CAF).
- Helps in the setup of platform-specific networking (packet-path) via VirtualPortGroup and management interfaces.

The container is referred to as the virtualization environment provided to run the guest application on the host operating system. The Cisco IOS-XE virtualization services provide manageability and networking models for running guest applications. The virtualization infrastructure allows the administrator to define a logical...
interface that specifies the connectivity between the host and the guest. IOx maps the logical interface into the Virtual Network Interface Card (vNIC) that the guest application uses.

Applications to be deployed in the containers are packaged as TAR files. The configuration that is specific to these applications is also packaged as part of the TAR file.

The management interface on the device connects the application hosting network to the IOS management interface. The Layer 3 interface of the application receives the Layer 2 bridged traffic from the IOS management interface. The management interface connects through the management bridge to the container/VM interface. The IP address of the application must be on the same subnet as the management interface IP address.

**IOXMAN**

IOXMAN is a process that establishes a tracing infrastructure to provide logging or tracing services for guest applications, except Libvirt, that emulates serial devices. IOXMAN is based on the lifecycle of the guest application to enable and disable the tracing service, to send logging data to IOS syslog, to save tracing data to IOx tracelog, and to maintain IOx tracelog for each guest application.

**Application Hosting on Catalyst 9000 Series Switches**

This section describes the application-hosting characteristics specific to Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches, Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switches, Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches, and Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series High Performance Switches.

These switches support VirtualPortGroup interfaces for front-panel access to third-party applications hosted on Linux containers.

USB 3.0 SSD is enabled on Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches. The USB 3.0 SSD provides an extra 120GB storage for application hosting. For more information, see the Configuring USB 3.0 SSD chapter in the Interfaces and Hardware Configuration Guide.

Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switches support an M2 Serial Advanced Technology Attachment (SATA) drive that can be plugged into the removable Supervisor. Front-panel USB is also supported; however, application hosting is not supported on the front-panel USB on Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switches. In Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.10.1 and later releases, Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switches support application hosting using USB3.0.

Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series High Performance Switches support back-panel USB 3.0, similar to the Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches and Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches.

**VirtualPortGroup**

The VirtualPortGroup is a software construct on Cisco IOS that maps to a Linux bridge IP address. As such, the VirtualPortGroup represents the switch virtual interface (SVI) of the Linux container. Each bridge can contain multiple interfaces; each mapping to a different container. Each container can also have multiple interfaces.

VirtualPortGroup interfaces are configured by using the `interface virtualportgroup` command. Once these interfaces are created, IP address and other resources are allocated.

A maximum of 32 VirtualPortGroup interfaces can be configured. Each of these VirtualPortGroup interfaces will have 2 forwarding entries.
The VirtualPortGroup interface connects the application hosting network to the IOS routing domain. The Layer 3 interface of the application receives routed traffic from IOS. The VirtualPortGroup interface connects through the SVC bridge to the container/VM interface.

*Figure 6: Application Hosting Networking*

For the container life cycle management, the Layer 3 routing model that supports one container per internal logical interface is used. This means that a virtual Ethernet pair is created for each application; and one interface of this pair, called vNIC is part of the application container. The other interface, called vpgX is part of the host system.

NIC is the standard Ethernet interface inside the container that connects to the platform dataplane for the sending and receiving of packets. IOx is responsible for the gateway (VirtualPortGroup interface), IP address, and unique MAC address assignment for each vNIC in the container.

The vNIC inside the container/VM are considered as standard Ethernet interfaces.
# How to Configure Application Hosting

## Enabling IOx

Perform this task to enable access to the IOx Local Manager. The IOx Local Manager provides a web-based user interface that you can use to manage, administer, monitor, and troubleshoot apps on the host system, and to perform a variety of related activities.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `enable`  
2. `configure terminal`  
3. `iox`  
4. `ip http server`  
5. `ip http secure-server`  
6. `username name privilege level password {0 | 7 | user-password}encrypted-password`  
7. `end`

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
| Example: `Device> enable` |  
| | - Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Step 2** `configure terminal` | Enters global configuration mode.  
| Example: `Device# configure terminal` | |
| **Step 3** `iox` | Enables IOx.  
| Example: `Device(config)# iox` | |
| **Step 4** `ip http server` | Enables the HTTP server on your IP or IPv6 system.  
| Example: `Device(config)# ip http server` | |
| **Step 5** `ip http secure-server` | Enables a secure HTTP (HTTPS) server.  
| Example: `Device(config)# ip http secure-server` | |
| **Step 6** `username name privilege level password {0 | 7 | user-password}encrypted-password` | Establishes a username-based authentication system and privilege level for the user.  
| Example: |  
| | - The username privilege level must be configured as 15. |
### Configuring a VirtualPortGroup to a Layer 3 Data Port

Multiple Layer 3 data ports can be routed to one or more VirtualPortGroups or containers. VirtualPortGroups and Layer 3 data ports must be on different subnets.

Enable the **ip routing** command to allow external routing on the Layer 3 data-port.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `ip routing`
4. `interface type number`
5. `no switchport`
6. `ip address ip-address mask`
7. `exit`
8. `interface type number`
9. `ip address ip-address mask`
10. `end`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1**
   * enable
   Example: Device> enable | Enables privileged EXEC mode.
   • Enter your password if prompted. |
| **Step 2**
   * configure terminal
   Example: Device# configure terminal | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 3**
   * ip routing
   Example: Device(config)# ip routing | Enables IP routing.
   • The **ip routing** command must be enabled to allow external routing on Layer 3 data ports. |
| **Step 4**
   * interface type number
   Example: Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1 | Configures an interface and enters interface configuration mode. |
Installing and Uninstalling Apps

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. app-hosting install appid application-name package package-path
3. app-hosting activate appid application-name
4. app-hosting start appid application-name
5. app-hosting stop appid application-name
6. app-hosting deactivate appid application-name
7. app-hosting uninstall appid application-name

### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### Application Hosting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 5 no switchport</td>
<td>Places the interface in Layer 3 mode, and makes it operate more like a router interface rather than a switch port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config-if)# no switchport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 6 ip address ip-address mask</td>
<td>Configures an IP address for the interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config-if)# ip address 10.1.1.1 255.255.255.254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 7 exit</td>
<td>Exits interface configuration mode and returns to global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config-if)# exit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 8 interface type number</td>
<td>Configures an interface and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config)# interface virtualportgroup 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 9 ip address ip-address mask</td>
<td>Configures an IP address for the interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config-if)# ip address 192.0.2.1 255.255.255.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 10 end</td>
<td>Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>Device(config-if)# end</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

---

---
### Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>app-hosting install appid application-name package package-path</code></td>
<td>Installs an app from the specified location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# <code>app-hosting install appid lxc_app package flash:my_lxc_app.tar</code></td>
<td>• The app can be installed from any local storage location such as, flash, bootflash, usbflash0, usbflash1, and harddisk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>app-hosting activate appid application-name</code></td>
<td>Activates the application.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# <code>app-hosting activate appid lxc_app</code></td>
<td>• This command validates all application resource requests, and if all resources are available the application is activated; if not, the activation fails.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>app-hosting start appid application-name</code></td>
<td>Starts the application.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# <code>app-hosting start appid lxc_app</code></td>
<td>• Application start-up scripts are activated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>app-hosting stop appid application-name</code></td>
<td>Stops the application.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# <code>app-hosting stop appid lxc_app</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>app-hosting deactivate appid application-name</code></td>
<td>Deactivates all resources allocated for the application.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# <code>app-hosting deactivate appid lxc_app</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>app-hosting uninstall appid application-name</code></td>
<td>Uninstalls the application.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# <code>app-hosting uninstall appid lxc_app</code></td>
<td>• Uninstalls all packaging and images stored. All changes and updates to the application is also removed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Manually Configuring the IP Address for an Application

You can set up the IP address of a Kernel-based Virtual Machine (KVM) or a Linux Container (LXC) by the following methods:

- Directly logging into the KVM or LXC, and configure the `ifconfig` Linux command.
- Enabling the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) in the KVM or LXC, and configuring DHCP server/relay in the IOS configuration.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `interface type number`
4. `vrf forwarding vrf-name`
5. `ip address ip-address mask`
6. `exit`
7. `interface type number`
8. `ip address ip-address mask`
9. `exit`
10. `app-hosting appid name`
11. `app-vnic gateway virtualportgroup number guest-interface network-interface`
12. `exit`
13. `app-vnic management guest-interface network-interface`
14. `end`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>interface type number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 0/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configures an interface and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>vrf forwarding vrf-name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# vrf forwarding Mgmt-vrf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Associates a Virtual Routing and Forwarding (VRF) instance or a virtual network with an interface or subinterface.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>ip address ip-address mask</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# ip address 198.51.100.1 255.255.255.254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configures an IP address for the interface.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td>exit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# exit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exits interface configuration mode and returns to global configuration mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong></td>
<td>interface type number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config)# interface VirtualPortGroup 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configures an interface and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong></td>
<td>ip address ip-address mask</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# ip address 192.0.2.1 255.255.255.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configures an IP address for the interface.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step</td>
<td>Command or Action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>exit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-if)# exit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>app-hosting appid name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config)# app-hosting appid lxc_app</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>app-vnic gateway virtualportgroup number guest-interface network-interface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-app-hosting)# app-vnic gateway1 virtualportgroup 0 guest-interface 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>exit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-app-hosting-gateway0)# exit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>app-vnic management guest-interface network-interface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-app-hosting)# vnic management guest-interface 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Device(config-app-hosting-mgmt-gateway)# end</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring a Static IP Address in an LXC

- Kernel-based Virtual Machines (KVMs) do not support the app-hosting static IP configuration.
- Only the last configured default gateway configuration is used.
- Only the last configured name server configuration is used.

You can configure the IP address of an LXC through IOS commands.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **interface type number**
4. **vrf forwarding vrf-name**
5. **ip address ip-address mask**
6. **exit**
7. **interface type number**
8. **ip address ip-address mask**
9. **exit**
10. **app-hosting appid name**
11. **app-vnic gateway virtualportgroup number guest-interface network-interface**
12. **guest-ipaddress ip-address netmask netmask**
13. **exit**
14. **name-server ip-address**
15. **app-vnic management guest-interface interface-number**
16. **guest-ipaddress ip-address netmask netmask**
17. **exit**
18. **app-default-gateway ip-address guest-interface network-interface**
19. **end**

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2 configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3 interface type number</td>
<td>Configures an interface and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 0/0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step</td>
<td>Command or Action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>vrf forwarding vrf-name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# vrf forwarding Mgmt-vrf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>ip address ip-address mask</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# ip address 198.51.100.1 255.255.255.254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>exit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# exit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>interface type number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config)# interface VirtualPortGroup 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>ip address ip-address mask</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# ip address 192.0.2.1 255.255.255.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>exit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# exit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>app-hosting appid name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config)# app-hosting appid lxc_app</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>app-vnic gateway virtualportgroup number guest-interface network-interface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config-app-hosting)# app-vnic gateway1 virtualportgroup 0 guest-interface 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>guest-ipaddress ip-address netmask netmask</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config-app-hosting-gateway1)# guest-ipaddress 10.0.0.3 netmask 255.255.255.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>exit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: Device(config-app-hosting-gateway1)# exit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Overriding the App Resource Configuration

Resource changes will take effect only after the `app-hosting activate` command is configured.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. app-hosting appid name
4. app-resource profile name
5. cpu unit
6. memory memory
7. vcpu number
8. end
## DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1**        | Enables privileged EXEC mode.  
  * Enter your password if prompted.  |
| `enable`          |         |
| **Example:**      |         |
| `Device> enable`  |         |
| **Step 2**        | Enters global configuration mode. |
| `configure terminal` |         |
| **Example:**      |         |
| `Device# configure terminal` |         |
| **Step 3**        | Enables application hosting and enters application hosting configuration mode. |
| `app-hosting appid name` |         |
| **Example:**      |         |
| `Device(config)# app-hosting appid lxc_app` |         |
| **Step 4**        | Configures the custom application resource profile, and enters custom application resource profile configuration mode.  
  * Only the custom profile name is supported.  |
| `app-resource profile name` |         |
| **Example:**      |         |
| `Device(config-app-hosting)# app-resource profile custom` |         |
| **Step 5**        | Changes the default CPU allocation for the application.  
  * Resource values are application-specific, and any adjustment to these values must ensure that the application can run reliably with the changes.  |
| `cpu unit`        |         |
| **Example:**      |         |
| `Device(config-app-resource-profile-custom)# cpu 7400` |         |
| **Step 6**        | Changes the default memory allocation. |
| `memory memory`   |         |
| **Example:**      |         |
| `Device(config-app-resource-profile-custom)# memory 2048` |         |
| **Step 7**        | Changes the virtual CPU (vCPU) allocation for the application. |
| `vcpu number`     |         |
| **Example:**      |         |
| `Device(config-app-resource-profile-custom)# vcpu 2` |         |
| **Step 8**        | Exits custom application resource profile configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode. |
| `end`             |         |
| **Example:**      |         |
| `Device(config-app-resource-profile-custom)# end` |         |

### Creating an LVM for Enabling App Hosting

**Note**: This task is applicable only to Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches.
You must create a local volume manager (LVM), to enable app hosting on the drive.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. **enable**
2. Use one of the following commands:
   - `request platform hardware filesystem ssdflash-slot: initialize`
   - `format ssdflash:LVM`
3. `request platform hardware filesystem ssdflash-slot: sanitize`
4. `show usbflash1: filesys`
5. `show file systems`

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> Use one of the following commands:</td>
<td>The drive enters LVM mode and is formatted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <code>request platform hardware filesystem ssdflash-slot: initialize</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <code>format ssdflash:LVM</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> <code>request platform hardware filesystem ssdflash-slot: sanitize</code></td>
<td>The drive goes back to the raw device state. All the data is erased on the drive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> <code>show usbflash1: filesys</code></td>
<td>Displays LVM file system information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> <code>show file systems</code></td>
<td>Displays general file system information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Verifying the Application Hosting Configuration**

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. **enable**
2. `show iox-service`
3. `show app-hosting detail`
4. `show app-hosting list`

**DETAILED STEPS**

**Step 1** enable

Enables privileged EXEC mode.

• Enter your password if prompted.
Example:
Device> enable

Step 2 show iox-service
Displays the status of all IOx services

Example:
Device# show iox-service

IOx Infrastructure Summary:
––––––––––––––––––––––––––––––––––
 IOx Service (CAF) : Running
 IOx Service (HA)  : Running
 IOx Service (IOxman) : Running
 Libvirtd     : Running

Step 3 show app-hosting detail
Displays detailed information about the application.

Example:
Device# show app-hosting detail

State : Running
Author : Cisco Systems, Inc
Application
 Type : vm
 App id : Wireshark
 Name : Wireshark
 Version : 3.4
 Activated Profile Name : custom
 Description : Lubuntu based Wireshark

Resource Reservation
 Memory : 1900 MB
 Disk : 10 MB
 CPU : 4000 units
 VCPU : 2

Attached devices
 Type Name Alias
–––––––––––––––––––––––––––––––––––––––––––––––––––––––––––––––––––––
 Serial/shell
 Serial/aux
 Serial/Syslog serial2
 Serial/Trace serial3

Network Interfaces
–––––––––––––––––––––––––––––––
eth0:
 MAC address : 52:54:dd:80:bd:59
 IPv4 address
eth1:
 MAC address : 52:54:dd:7c:7c:aa
 IPv4 address

Step 4 show app-hosting list
Displays the list of applications and their status.

Example:
Configuration Examples for Application Hosting

Example: Enabling IOx

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# iox
Device(config)# ip http server
Device(config)# ip http secure-server
Device(config)# username cisco privilege 15 password 0 cisco
Device(config)# end
```

Example: Configuring a VirtualPortGroup to a Layer 3 Data Port

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ip routing
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1
Device(config-if)# no switchport
Device(config-if)# ip address 10.1.1.1 255.255.255.254
Device(config-if)# exit
Device(config)# interface virtualportgroup 0
Device(config-if)# ip address 192.0.2.1 255.255.255.1
Device(config-if)# end
```

Example: Installing and Uninstalling Apps

```
Device> enable
Device# app-hosting install appid lxc_app package flash:my_iox_app.tar.tar
Device# app-hosting activate appid lxc_app
Device# app-hosting start appid lxc_app
Device# app-hosting stop appid lxc_app
Device# app-hosting deactivate appid lxc_app
Device# app-hosting uninstall appid lxc_app
```
Example: Manually Configuring the IP Address for an Application

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 0/0
Device(config-if)# vrf forwarding Mgmt-vrf
Device(config-if)# ip address 198.51.100.1 255.255.255.254
Device(config-if)# exit
Device(config-if)# interface virtualportgroup 0
Device(config-if)# ip address 192.0.2.1 255.255.255.1
Device(config-if)# exit
Device(config)# app-hosting appid lxc_app
Device(config-app-hosting)# app-vnic gateway1 virtualportgroup 0 guest-interface 1
Device(config-app-hosting-gateway0)# exit
Device(config-app-hosting)# app-vnic management guest-interface 1
Device(config-app-hosting-mgmt-gateway)# end
```

Example: Configuring a Static IP Address in an LXC

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 0/0
Device(config-if)# vrf forwarding Mgmt-vrf
Device(config-if)# ip address 198.51.100.1 255.255.255.254
Device(config-if)# exit
Device(config-if)# interface virtualportgroup 0
Device(config-if)# ip address 192.0.2.1 255.255.255.1
Device(config-if)# exit
Device(config)# app-hosting appid lxc_app
Device(config-app-hosting)# app-vnic gateway1 virtualportgroup 0 guest-interface 1
Device(config-app-hosting-gateway0)# exit
Device(config-app-hosting)# app-vnic management guest-interface 1
Device(config-app-hosting-mgmt-gateway)# guest-ipaddress 10.0.0.3 netmask 255.255.255.0
Device(config-app-hosting-mgmt-gateway)# exit
Device(config-app-hosting)# name-server0 10.2.2.2
Device(config-app-hosting)# app-vnic management guest-interface 0
Device(config-app-hosting-mgmt-gateway)# guest-ipaddress 172.19.0.24 netmask 255.255.255.0
Device(config-app-hosting-mgmt-gateway)# exit
Device(config-app-hosting-mgmt-gateway)# app-default-gateway 172.19.0.23 guest-interface 0
Device(config-app-hosting)# end
```

Example: Overriding the App Resource Configuration

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# app-hosting appid lxc_app
Device(config-app-hosting)# app-resource profile custom
Device(config-app-resource-profile-custom)# cpu 7400
Device(config-app-resource-profile-custom)# memory 2048
Device(config-app-resource-profile-custom)# vcpu 2
Device(config-app-resource-profile-custom)# end
```
Feature Information for Application Hosting

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to www.cisco.com/go/cfn. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

Table 25: Feature Information for Application Hosting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Application Hosting  | Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.1 | A hosted application is a software as a service (SaaS) solution, and users can execute and operate this solution entirely from the cloud. This module describes the Application Hosting feature and how to enable it. In Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.1, this feature was implemented on the following platforms:  
  • Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches  
  • Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switches  
  • Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches |


PART V

OpenFlow

- OpenFlow, on page 189
CHAPTER 15

OpenFlow

This module describes how to enable and configure OpenFlow on a device.

• Prerequisites for OpenFlow, on page 189
• Restrictions for OpenFlow, on page 189
• Information About OpenFlow, on page 190
• How to Configure OpenFlow, on page 194
• Configuration Examples for OpenFlow, on page 198
• Verifying OpenFlow, on page 199
• Additional References for OpenFlow, on page 201
• Feature Information for OpenFlow, on page 202

Prerequisites for OpenFlow

The device must be booted up in OpenFlow mode.

OpenFlow mode is enabled, when you configure the boot mode openflow command on a switch. All ports will be in this mode, and the switch will not support any regular Cisco IOS XE features.

Restrictions for OpenFlow

• When enabling OpenFlow mode on a device, erase all prior configurations, and delete the vlan.dat and stby-vlan.dat files from the flash filesystem.

When the device is in OpenFlow mode, do not enable other control plane protocols (protocols such as Border Gateway Protocol [BGP], Spanning Tree Protocol [STP], Port Channels, StackWise and so on) that work when the device is in normal mode.
**Information About OpenFlow**

**OpenFlow Overview**

OpenFlow is a specification from the Open Networking Foundation (ONF) that defines a flow-based forwarding infrastructure and a standardized application-programmatic interface. OpenFlow allows a controller to direct the forwarding functions of a device through a secure channel.

OpenFlow is the protocol between the controller (control plane) and the Ethernet switch (data plane). The switch/device has flow tables arranged into a pipeline. Flows are rules to examine packets that reach these tables.

An OpenFlow agent on the switch communicates with the controller using the OpenFlow protocol. The agent supports both OpenFlow 1.0 (wire protocol 0x1) and OpenFlow 1.3 (wire protocol 0x4). It can have up to 8 controller connections. These connections are not preserved across switchover, and the controller will have to reconnect to the agent.

The OpenFlow implementation on Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switches is stateless; and non-stop forwarding (NSF) is not supported. The standby supervisor does not sync to the flow database.

**OpenFlow Controller**

The OpenFlow controller is an entity that interacts with the OpenFlow switch using the OpenFlow protocol. In most cases, the controller is a software that manages many OpenFlow logical switches. Controllers offer a centralized view of the network, and enable administrators to dictate to the underlying systems (switches and routers) on how to handle the network traffic. A controller typically runs on a Linux server, and must have IP connectivity to OpenFlow-capable switches.

The controller manages the switch, and inserts and deletes flows on the switch. These flows support a subset of OpenFlow 1.3 and 1.0 match and action criteria.

The switch connects to the controller using the management port. The management port is in the management virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) instance, and hence provides a secure connection to the controller. To connect a controller to the switch, configure the IP address and port number on which the controller can be reached.

**Flow Management**

A flow entry is an element in a flow table that is used to match and process packets. It contains a priority for matching precedence, a set of match fields for matching packets, a set of instructions to apply, and packet and byte counters. A timeout is also associated with each flow (a hard timeout or an inactivity timeout), which is used to automatically remove flows.

Cisco Catalyst 9000 Series Switches support a maximum of 9 flow tables.

Each flow provides the following information:

- Priority: High priority flows are matched first. Any flow update requires all flows to be prioritized based on the configured priority.

- Match fields: A part of a flow entry against which a packet is matched. Match fields can match the various packet header fields. If no match information is provided for a field; a wildcard is used.
• Action: An operation that acts on a packet.

OpenFlow Pipeline

An OpenFlow pipeline is a set of linked flow tables that provide matching, forwarding, and packet modification in an OpenFlow switch. A port is where packets enter and exits the pipeline.

Packets are received on an ingress port and processed by the OpenFlow pipeline that forwards it to output ports. The packet ingress port is owned by the packet throughout the pipeline, and represents the port on which the packet was received into the switch. The ingress port can also be used as a match field in a flow.

Flow actions allow packets to be sent to subsequent tables in the pipeline for further processing, and allow information to be communicated between tables. Pipeline processing stops when the action associated with a matching flow entry does not specify the next table. At this point, the packet is usually modified and forwarded. The packet can also be dropped.

Flow tables of an OpenFlow switch are sequentially numbered, starting from 0. Pipeline processing always starts by matching the packet against flow entries of flow table 0. Other flow tables may be used depending on the outcome of the match and actions in the first table, which could result in matching the packet against flow entries in subsequent tables.

Supported Match Fields and Actions

Match Field is a field against which a packet is matched, including packet headers, and the ingress port. A match field can be a wildcard (match any value) and have a bit mask to match selected bits of the field.

Action is an operation that forwards a packet to a port or subsequent tables, or modifies a packet field. Actions may be specified as part of the instructions associated with a flow entry, or an action bucket associated with a group entry. A group entry is a collection of actions that can be shared by multiple flows.

The action specified in one or more flow entries can direct packets to a base action called a group action. The purpose of the group action is to share a set of actions among multiple flows. A group consist of one or more buckets, and in turn, a bucket can have a set of actions (set, pop, or output). Cisco Catalyst 9000 Series Switches support group types, all and indirect.

This section lists the supported match fields and actions:

Table 26: Supported Match Fields

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Header Fields</th>
<th>Prerequisites</th>
<th>Maskable Entries</th>
<th>Example Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ethernet destination MAC address</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td>01:80:c2:00:00:00/ff:ff:ff:00:00:00 (with mask)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>de:f3:50:c7:e2:b2 (without mask)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethernet source MAC address</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td>0e:00:00:00:00:019 (without mask)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethernet type</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ARP (0x0806), IPv4 (0x0800), IPv6 (0x86dd), and so on</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Supported Match Fields and Actions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Header Fields</th>
<th>Prerequisites</th>
<th>Maskable Entries</th>
<th>Example Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VLAN ID</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0x13f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARP target protocol address</td>
<td>Ethernet type should be set to 0x0806</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP protocol</td>
<td>Ethernet type should be set to 0x0800 or 0x86dd</td>
<td></td>
<td>ICMP (0x01), TCP (0x06), UDP (0x11), and so on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPv4 source address</td>
<td>Ethernet type should be set to 0x0800</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>10.0.0.0/24 (with mask)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPv4 destination address</td>
<td>Ethernet type should be set to 0x0800</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>10.0.0.254 (without mask)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPv6 source address</td>
<td>Ethernet type should be set to 0x08dd</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>2001:DB8::1 (without mask)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPv6 destination address</td>
<td>Ethernet type should be set to 0x08dd</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>2001:DB8:0:ABCD::1/48 (with mask)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neighbor Discovery Target</td>
<td>Ethernet type should be set to 0x08dd and IP protocol should be set to 0x01</td>
<td></td>
<td>ND target</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICMPv6 type</td>
<td>Ethernet type should be set to 0x08dd and IP protocol should be set to 0x01</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UDP/TCP source port</td>
<td>Ethernet type should be set to 0x0800 or 0x86dd and protocol should be set to 0x06 or 0x11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UDP/TCP destination port</td>
<td>Ethernet type should be set to 0x0800 or 0x86dd and protocol should be set to 0x06 or 0x11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incoming interface</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Supported Actions

A flow can send a packet to:

- The controller
- Any interface of the switch (including the incoming interface)
- A subsequent flow table (after table 0) for another lookup
• To a group

A flow can also modify the following header fields of a packet:

• Ethernet destination MAC address
• Ethernet source MAC address
• VLAN ID

A flow can add (push) or remove (pop) a VLAN tag. If the packet is an IP packet, the flow can decrement the Time to Live (TTL) header field.

**Flow Operations**

This section describes the operations that take place when a flow is sent by the controller to be programmed in the OpenFlow device.

The device has flow tables arranged into a pipeline. The pipeline capabilities information specifies the structure of the pipeline, such as the number of tables/stages, what each stage is capable of doing (match/actions), and the size of each table.

When the controller sends a flow request, the OpenFlow agent verifies whether the flow can be handled by the hardware. It compares the flow against the capabilities of the hardware that are defined when the switch is booted up. If the flow is valid, it is then programmed in the appropriate flow table.

If the new pipeline is validated (whether the hardware can support the pipeline), it becomes the new set of capabilities that is used to check if a flow can be installed or not.

Once the pipeline is instantiated and flows are installed, packets are forwarded by the switch. Ingress packets are matched against flows in each flow table, until the highest-priority matching flow entry is found. Packet matching may be exact (match all fields of the table exactly), or partial (match some or all fields, and fields with bit masks may be partially matched). Packets may be modified or forwarded based on the configured actions. Actions can be applied at any time in the pipeline. The action may determine the next flow table to match, the set of egress ports for the packet, and whether the packet should be routed to the controller.

**OpenFlow Table Pipeline**

OpenFlow table feature request messages allow an OpenFlow controller to query the capabilities of existing flow tables of an OpenFlow-managed device, or configure these tables to match the supplied configuration.

All tables may be configured with any subset of the match and action capabilities. Table sizes can also be modified at runtime. When a new flow table configuration is successfully applied, flow entries from old flow tables are removed without any notification. Dynamically configured flow tables are not persistent across reboot. The default pipeline comes up when the device boots up.

While configuring a new flow table based on a request from the OpenFlow controller, any ongoing traffic flowing via the existing flows are dropped.
How to Configure OpenFlow

Enabling OpenFlow Mode on a Device

If the switch is operating in normal mode, we recommend that you configure the write erase command to delete the previous configuration.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. boot mode openflow
4. exit
5. write erase
6. • delete flash: vlan.dat
   • delete flash: stby-vlan.dat
7. reload
8. enable
9. show boot mode

DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device&gt; enable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> boot mode openflow</td>
<td>Enables OpenFlow forwarding mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# boot mode openflow</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> exit</td>
<td>Exits global configuration mode and enters privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device(config)# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> write erase</td>
<td>Erases all files in the NVRAM.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>• This is recommended if the device was operating in normal mode previously.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device# write erase</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> • delete flash: vlan.dat</td>
<td>Deletes the vlan.dat file that stores the VLAN information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• delete flash:stby-vlan.dat</td>
<td>• Delete the stby-vlan.dat file, if you have a standby device.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

Device# delete flash:vlan.dat
Device# delete flash:stby-vlan.dat

**Step 7**
**reload**

**Example:**

Device# reload

**Step 8**
**enable**

**Example:**

Device> enable

**Step 9**
**show boot mode**

**Example:**

Device# show boot mode

---

**Example**

The following sample output from the **show boot mode** command shows that the device is in OpenFlow mode:

Device# show boot mode

System initialized in openflow forwarding mode
System configured to boot in openflow forwarding mode

---

**What to do next**

To go back to normal mode, configure the **no boot mode openflow** command and then reload the device.

---

**Configuring OpenFlow**

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. feature openflow
4. openflow
5. switch 1 pipeline 1
6. controller ipv4 ip-address port port-number vrf vrf-name security {none | tls}
7. datapath-id ID
8. tls trustpoint local name remote name
9. end
### DETAILED STEPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>- Enter your password if prompted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> feature openflow</td>
<td>Enables the OpenFlow feature.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# feature openflow</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> openflow</td>
<td>Enables OpenFlow configuration and enters OpenFlow configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config)# openflow</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> switch 1 pipeline 1</td>
<td>Configures a logical switch and pipeline, and enters OpenFlow switch configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-openflow)# switch 1 pipeline 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> controller ipv4 ip-address port port-number vrf vrf-name security {none</td>
<td>tls}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-openflow-switch)# controller ipv4 10.2.2.2 port 6633 vrf Mgmt-vrf security tls</td>
<td>- You must configure the <strong>tls trustpoint</strong> command, if you have configured TLS as the OpenFlow controller connection security option.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- You do not need to configure <strong>tls trustpoint</strong> command, if you have not configured any security option for the OpenFlow controller.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> datapath-id ID</td>
<td>(Optional) Sets the OpenFlow logical switch ID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-openflow-switch)# datapath-id 0x12345678</td>
<td>- The ID argument specifies the Switch ID, which is a hexadecimal value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong> tls trustpoint local name remote name</td>
<td>(Optional) Configures an OpenFlow switch Transport Layer Security (TLS) trustpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-openflow-switch)# tls trustpoint local trustpoint1 remote trustpoint1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 9</strong> end</td>
<td>Exits OpenFlow switch configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> Device(config-openflow-switch)# end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring Interfaces in OpenFlow Mode

You can either configure a Layer 2 or Layer 3 interface in OpenFlow mode. When using a Layer 3 interface configure the `no switchport` command in interface configuration mode. Perform the following task when using a Layer 2 interface.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **feature openflow**
4. **interface type number**
5. **switchport mode trunk**
6. **switchport nonnegotiate**
7. **no keepalive**
8. **spanning-tree bpdusfilter enable**
9. **end**

**DETAILED STEPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> enable</td>
<td>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device&gt; enable</td>
<td>• Enter your password if prompted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> feature openflow</td>
<td>Enables the OpenFlow feature.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# feature openflow</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> interface type number</td>
<td>Configures an interface and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> switchport mode trunk</td>
<td>Sets the trunking mode of the Layer 2-switched interface to trunk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# switchport mode trunk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> switchport nonnegotiate</td>
<td>Specifies that the device will not engage in negotiation protocol on this interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: Device(config-if)# switchport nonnegotiate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 7</td>
<td>Disables keepalive packets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no keepalive</td>
<td>Device(config-if)# no keepalive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 8</td>
<td>Enables bridge protocol data unit (BPDU) filtering on the interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spanning-tree bpdufilter enable</td>
<td>Device(config-if)# spanning-tree bpdufilter enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 9</td>
<td>Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
<td>Device(config-if)# end</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Configuration Examples for OpenFlow**

**Example: Enabling OpenFlow on a Device**

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# boot mode openflow
Device(config)# exit
Device# write erase
Device# reload
Device> enable
Device# show boot mode
```

**Example: Configuring OpenFlow**

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# feature openflow
Device(config)# openflow
Device(config-openflow)# switch 1 pipeline 1
Device(config-openflow-switch)# controller ipv4 10.2.2.2 port 6633 vrf Mgmt-vrf security tls
Device(config-openflow-switch)# datapath-id 0x12345678
Device(config-openflow-switch)# tls trustpoint local trustpoint1 remote trustpoint1
Device(config-openflow-switch)# end
```
Verifying OpenFlow

SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. show openflow hardware capabilities
3. show openflow switch 1 controller
4. show openflow switch 1 ports
5. show openflow switch 1 flows list

DETAILED STEPS

Step 1 enable

Enables privileged EXEC mode.
- Enter your password if prompted.

Example:
Device> enable

Step 2 show openflow hardware capabilities

Displays the hardware capabilities of an OpenFlow device.

Example:
Device# show openflow hardware capabilities

Max Interfaces: 1000
Aggregated Statistics: YES

Pipeline ID: 1
Pipeline Max Flows: 2322
Max Flow Batch Size: 100
Statistics Max Polling Rate (flows/sec): 10000
Pipeline Default Statistics Collect Interval: 5

Flow table ID: 0

Max Flow Batch Size: 100
Max Flows: 1022
Bind Subintfs: FALSE
Primary Table: TRUE
Table Programmable: TRUE
Miss Programmable: TRUE
Number of goto tables: 1
Goto table id: 1
Number of miss goto tables: 1
Miss Goto table id: 1
Stats collection time for full table (sec): 1
Step 3  show openflow switch 1 controller
Displays information about the controller connected to the switch.

Example:
Device# show openflow switch 1 controller

Logical Switch Id: 1
Total Controllers: 1
Controller: 1
10.10.23.200:6633
Protocol: tcp
VRF: Mgmt-vrf
Connected: Yes
Role: Equal
Negotiated Protocol Version: OpenFlow 1.3
Last Alive Ping: 2018-06-04 17:59:20 PDT
state: ACTIVE
sec_since_connect: 50

Step 4  show openflow switch 1 ports
Displays information about the ports on an OpenFlow switch.

Example:
Device# show openflow switch 1 ports
Logical Switch Id: 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Port</th>
<th>Interface Name</th>
<th>Config-State</th>
<th>Link-State</th>
<th>Features</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Gi1/0/1</td>
<td>PORT_UP</td>
<td>LINK_UP</td>
<td>1GB-FD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Gi1/0/2</td>
<td>PORT_UP</td>
<td>LINK_UP</td>
<td>1GB-FD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Gi1/0/3</td>
<td>PORT_UP</td>
<td>LINK_UP</td>
<td>1GB-FD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Gi1/0/4</td>
<td>PORT_UP</td>
<td>LINK_UP</td>
<td>1GB-FD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Gi1/0/5</td>
<td>PORT_UP</td>
<td>LINK_DOWN</td>
<td>1GB-HD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Gi1/0/6</td>
<td>PORT_UP</td>
<td>LINK_DOWN</td>
<td>1GB-HD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Gi1/0/7</td>
<td>PORT_UP</td>
<td>LINK_DOWN</td>
<td>1GB-HD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Gi1/0/8</td>
<td>PORT_UP</td>
<td>LINK_DOWN</td>
<td>1GB-HD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Gi1/0/9</td>
<td>PORT_UP</td>
<td>LINK_UP</td>
<td>1GB-FD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Gi1/0/10</td>
<td>PORT_UP</td>
<td>LINK_UP</td>
<td>1GB-FD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Gi1/0/11</td>
<td>PORT_UP</td>
<td>LINK_UP</td>
<td>1GB-FD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Gi1/0/12</td>
<td>PORT_UP</td>
<td>LINK_UP</td>
<td>1GB-FD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Gi1/0/13</td>
<td>PORT_UP</td>
<td>LINK_DOWN</td>
<td>1GB-HD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Gi1/0/14</td>
<td>PORT_UP</td>
<td>LINK_DOWN</td>
<td>1GB-HD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Gi1/0/15</td>
<td>PORT_UP</td>
<td>LINK_DOWN</td>
<td>1GB-HD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Gi1/0/16</td>
<td>PORT_UP</td>
<td>LINK_DOWN</td>
<td>1GB-HD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Gi1/0/17</td>
<td>PORT_UP</td>
<td>LINK_DOWN</td>
<td>1GB-HD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Gi1/0/18</td>
<td>PORT_UP</td>
<td>LINK_DOWN</td>
<td>1GB-HD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Gi1/0/19</td>
<td>PORT_UP</td>
<td>LINK_UP</td>
<td>1GB-FD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Gi1/0/20</td>
<td>PORT_UP</td>
<td>LINK_UP</td>
<td>1GB-FD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Gi1/0/21</td>
<td>PORT_UP</td>
<td>LINK_UP</td>
<td>1GB-FD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Gi1/0/22</td>
<td>PORT_UP</td>
<td>LINK_UP</td>
<td>1GB-FD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Gi1/0/23</td>
<td>PORT_UP</td>
<td>LINK_DOWN</td>
<td>1GB-HD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Gi1/0/24</td>
<td>PORT_UP</td>
<td>LINK_DOWN</td>
<td>1GB-HD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Gi1/1/1</td>
<td>PORT_UP</td>
<td>LINK_DOWN</td>
<td>1GB-HD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Gi1/1/2</td>
<td>PORT_UP</td>
<td>LINK_DOWN</td>
<td>1GB-HD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Gi1/1/3</td>
<td>PORT_UP</td>
<td>LINK_DOWN</td>
<td>1GB-HD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Gi1/1/4</td>
<td>PORT_UP</td>
<td>LINK_DOWN</td>
<td>1GB-HD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Te1/1/1</td>
<td>PORT_UP</td>
<td>LINK_DOWN</td>
<td>10GB-FD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Te1/1/2</td>
<td>PORT_UP</td>
<td>LINK_DOWN</td>
<td>10GB-FD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Te1/1/3</td>
<td>PORT_UP</td>
<td>LINK_DOWN</td>
<td>10GB-FD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>Te1/1/4</td>
<td>PORT_UP</td>
<td>LINK_DOWN</td>
<td>10GB-FD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>Te1/1/5</td>
<td>PORT_UP</td>
<td>LINK_DOWN</td>
<td>10GB-FD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>Te1/1/6</td>
<td>PORT_UP</td>
<td>LINK_DOWN</td>
<td>10GB-FD</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Step 5  
**show openflow switch 1 flows list**

Displays OpenFlow entries.

The following sample output displays a flow that is installed in table 0, where *match any* goes to Table 1. (Match any means that all packets go to Table 1.) In table 1, the destination MAC address 00:00:01:00:00:01 is matched, and the output port is set to 36.

**Example:**

```
Device# show openflow switch 1 flows list

Logical Switch Id: 1
Total flows: 8

Flow: 1 Match: any Actions: goto_table:1, Priority: 9000, Table: 0, Cookie: 0x1,
Duration: 2382.117s, Packets: 34443, Bytes: 3359315

Flow: 2 Match: any Actions: drop, Priority: 0, Table: 0, Cookie: 0x0,
Duration: 2382.118s, Packets: 294137, Bytes: 28806211

Flow: 3 Match: any Actions: drop, Priority: 0, Table: 1, Cookie: 0x0,
Duration: 2382.118s, Packets: 34443, Bytes: 3359315

Flow: 4 Match: dl_dst=00:00:01:00:00:01 Actions: output:36, Priority: 9000,
Table: 1, Cookie: 0x1, Duration: 2382.116s, Packets: 0, Bytes: 0
```

### Additional References for OpenFlow

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OpenFlow commands</td>
<td><em>Programmability Command Reference</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open Network Foundation</td>
<td><a href="https://www.opennetworking.org/">https://www.opennetworking.org/</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Faucet OpenFlow controller</td>
<td>• <a href="https://faucet.nz/">https://faucet.nz/</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <a href="https://docs.faucet.nz/en/latest/">https://docs.faucet.nz/en/latest/</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MIBs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MIB</th>
<th>MIBs Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To locate and download MIBs for selected platforms, Cisco IOS releases, and feature sets, use Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL: <a href="http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs">http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Technical Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cisco.com/support">http://www.cisco.com/support</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feature Information for OpenFlow

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn). An account on Cisco.com is not required.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| OpenFlow     | Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.9.1 | OpenFlow is a Software-Defined Network (SDN) standard. It defines a communication protocol in SDN environments that enables an SDN controller to directly interact with the forwarding plane of network devices such as switches and routers. This feature was implemented on the following platforms:  
  - Catalyst 9300 Series Switches  
  - Catalyst 9400 Series Switches  
  - Catalyst 9500 Series Switches  
  - Catalyst 9500 Series High Performance Switches |